C/C++ API User Guide
Table of Contents

About This Manual ........................................................................................................................................................................... xxi

Helix documentation .......................................................................................................................................................................... xxix
Syntax conventions .................................................................................................................................................................................. xxiii
Please give us feedback ........................................................................................................................................................................ xxiii

Chapter 1  Overview ............................................................................................................................................................................. 1

Release compatibility of the API ...................................................................................................................................................... 1
Purpose of the API ................................................................................................................................................................................ 1
Architecture of the API ................................................................................................................................................................. 1
API files ....................................................................................................................................................................................... 1

Chapter 2  Application Programming ......................................................................................................................... 3

Compiling and linking Perforce applications ...................................................................................................................................... 3
  Link order .................................................................................................................................................................................... 3
  SSL support .............................................................................................................................................................................. 3
    OpenSSL Library Version ......................................................................................................................................................... 3
    Link order for SSL support .................................................................................................................................................... 4
  Compiler support ....................................................................................................................................................................... 4
    UNIX ...................................................................................................................................................................................... 4
    Linux .................................................................................................................................................................................... 4
    Windows ................................................................................................................................................................................ 4
  Sample Jamfile ......................................................................................................................................................................... 5
  Sample Makefile .................................................................................................................................................................... 5
Building with Jam .............................................................................................................................................................................. 5
  Building the sample application .................................................................................................................................................. 6
Sending commands to the versioning service ..................................................................................................................................... 8
  Perforce settings on the user’s machine ...................................................................................................................................... 9
  Connecting to the server ............................................................................................................................................................ 9
  Displaying Perforce forms ......................................................................................................................................................... 9
  Sending commands .................................................................................................................................................................. 10
  Processing data from the server ............................................................................................................................................... 10
    Tagged data .......................................................................................................................................................................... 10
    Untagged Data .................................................................................................................................................................... 12
  Disconnecting from the server .................................................................................................................................................. 12
Performing file I/O ............................................................................................................................................................................... 12
Handling errors ................................................................................................................................................................................. 15
  Connection errors .................................................................................................................................................................... 16
  Server errors ............................................................................................................................................................................ 16
Class overviews ................................................................................................................................................................................ 16
  ClientApi - Perforce server connections and commands ........................................................................................................... 16
  ClientProgress - progress indicators for Perforce commands .............................................................................................. 17
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::GetConfig()</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::GetClient()</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::Final( Error * )</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::Dropped()</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::DefineUser( const char *, Error * )</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::DefinePort( const char *, Error * )</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::DefinePassword( const char *, Error * )</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile( const char *, Error * )</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi::DefineHost( const char *, Error * )</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrPtr - text operations</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrOps - string operations</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrRef - refer to existing strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options - parse and store command line options</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog - output error messages</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error - collect and report layered errors</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore - support for rejecting files</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi - logic for view mappings</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signaler - interrupt handling</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf - string manipulation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrDict - field/value manipulation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrNum - small numeric strings</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Dump( const char * )</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Fmt( StrBuf * )</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Fmt( StrBuf *, int )</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::GetGeneric()</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::GetSeverity()</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::IsFatal()</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::IsWarning()</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Net( const char *, const char * )</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::operator &lt;&lt; ( int )</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::operator &lt;&lt; ( char * )</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::operator &lt;&lt; ( const StrPtr &amp; )</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::operator = ( Error &amp; )</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Set( enum ErrorSeverity, const char * )</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Set( ErrorId &amp; )</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Sys( const char *, const char * )</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error::Test()</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog methods</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::Abort()</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::Report()</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::SetLog( const char * )</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::SetSyslog()</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::SetTag( const char * )</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ErrorLog::UnsetSyslog()</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys methods</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Chmod( FilePerm, Error * )</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Close( Error * )</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Create( FileSysType )</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Open( FileOpenMode, Error * )</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Read( const char *, int, Error * )</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Rename( FileSys *, Error * )</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Set( const StrPtr * )</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Stat()</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::StatModTime()</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Truncate()</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Unlink( Error * )</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileSys::Write( const char *, int, Error * )</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::InitLocalServer(ClientUser*, Error*)</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath(ServerHelperApi*, const char*, ClientUser*, Error*)</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath(ServerHelperApi*, const StrPtr*, ClientUser*, Error*)</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote(ServerHelperApi*, const char*, ClientUser*, Error*)</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote(ServerHelperApi*, const StrPtr*, ClientUser*, Error*)</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetCaseFlag(const char*, Error*)</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetCaseFlag(const StrPtr*, Error*)</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetClient(const char*)</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetClient(const StrPtr*)</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetDefaultStream(const char*)</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetDefaultStream(const StrPtr*)</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetDvcsDir(const char*)</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetDvcsDir(const StrPtr*)</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetProg(const char*)</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetProg(const StrPtr*)</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetPort(const char*)</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetPort(const StrPtr*)</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetProtocol(const char*, const char*)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetProtocolV(const char*)</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi::SetQuiet()</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes ............................................................................................................... 226
ServerHelperApi::SetUnicode(int) ................................................................. 203
Notes ............................................................................................................... 203
ServerHelperApi::SetUser(const char*) ....................................................... 204
Notes ............................................................................................................... 204
ServerHelperApi::SetUser(const StrPtr*) ..................................................... 205
Notes ............................................................................................................... 205
ServerHelperApi::SetVersion(const char*) .................................................. 206
Notes ............................................................................................................... 206
See also ......................................................................................................... 206
ServerHelperApi::SetVersion(const StrPtr*) ................................................ 207
Notes ............................................................................................................... 207
Signaler methods .......................................................................................... 208
Signaler::Block() .......................................................................................... 208
Notes ............................................................................................................... 208
See also ......................................................................................................... 208
Example ......................................................................................................... 208
Signaler::Catch() .......................................................................................... 209
Notes ............................................................................................................... 209
See also ......................................................................................................... 209
Example ......................................................................................................... 209
Signaler::DeleteOnIntr( void * ) ................................................................. 210
See also ......................................................................................................... 210
Example ......................................................................................................... 211
Signaler::Intr() .............................................................................................. 212
Notes ............................................................................................................... 212
Caveat ............................................................................................................. 212
See also ......................................................................................................... 212
Example ......................................................................................................... 213
Signaler::OnIntr( SignalFunc, void * ) ...................................................... 215
Notes ............................................................................................................... 215
See also ......................................................................................................... 215
Example ......................................................................................................... 216
Signaler::Signaler() (constructor) ............................................................ 217
Notes ............................................................................................................... 217
See also ......................................................................................................... 217
StrBuf methods ............................................................................................. 218
StrBuf::Alloc( int ) ....................................................................................... 218
Notes ............................................................................................................... 218
Example ......................................................................................................... 219
StrBuf::Append( const char * ) .................................................................. 220
Notes ............................................................................................................... 220
Example ......................................................................................................... 220
StrBuf::Append( const char *, int ) ............................................................ 221
Notes ............................................................................................................... 221
Example ......................................................................................................... 221
StrBuf::Append( const StrPtr * ) ................................................................. 223
Notes ............................................................................................................... 223
Example ......................................................................................................... 224
StrBuf::Clear() .............................................................................................. 226
Notes ............................................................................................................... 226
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>StrBuf::StrBuf() (Constructor)</th>
<th>228</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::StrBuf( const StrBuf &amp; ) (Copy Constructor)</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::~StrBuf() (Destructor)</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::Extend( char )</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::Extend( const char *, int )</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator = ( const char * )</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator = ( const StrBuf &amp; )</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator = ( const StrPtr &amp; )</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator = ( const StrRef &amp; )</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator &lt;&lt; ( const char * )</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator &lt;&lt; ( int )</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator &lt;&lt; ( const StrPtr * )</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::operator &lt;&lt; ( const StrPtr &amp; )</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::Set( const char * )</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::Set( const char *, int )</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrBuf::Set( const StrPtr * )</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example ................................................................. 249
StrBuf::Set( const StrPtr & ) ................................................. 250
Notes ................................................................. 250
Example ................................................................. 250
StrBuf::StringInit() ......................................................... 252
Notes ................................................................. 252
See also ................................................................. 252
Example ................................................................. 253
StrBuf::Terminate() ......................................................... 255
Notes ................................................................. 255
Example ................................................................. 255
See also ................................................................. 255
Example ................................................................. 256
StrDict methods ................................................................. 257
StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & ) ............................................. 257
Notes ................................................................. 257
Example ................................................................. 257
StrDict::GetVar( const char * ) ............................................. 259
Notes ................................................................. 259
StrDict::GetVar( const char *, Error * ) ................................ 260
Notes ................................................................. 260
StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int ) .................................... 261
Notes ................................................................. 261
StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int, int ) ................................ 262
Notes ................................................................. 262
StrDict::GetVar( int, StrPtr &, StrPtr & ) .............................. 263
Notes ................................................................. 263
StrDict::Load( FILE * ) ...................................................... 264
Notes ................................................................. 264
Example ................................................................. 264
StrDict::Save( FILE * ) ...................................................... 265
Notes ................................................................. 265
Example ................................................................. 265
StrDict::SetArgv( int, char *const * ) ................................. 266
Notes ................................................................. 266
Example ................................................................. 266
StrNum methods ................................................................. 267
StrNum::StrNum( int ) (constructor) ...................................... 267
Notes ................................................................. 267
Example ................................................................. 267
StrNum::Set( int ) ............................................................ 268
Notes ................................................................. 268
Example ................................................................. 268
StrOps methods ................................................................. 269
StrOps::Caps( StrBuf & ) ..................................................... 269
Example ................................................................. 269
StrOps::Dump( const StrPtr & ) ............................................. 270
Notes ................................................................. 270
Example ................................................................. 270
StrOps::Expand( StrBuf &, StrPtr &, StrDict & ) ...................... 271
Notes ................................................................. 271
StrPtr::operators ==, !=, >, <, <=, >= (const char *) .................................................. 290
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 290
   Example ........................................................................................................ 290
StrPtr::operators ==, !=, >, <, <=, >= (const StrPtr &) .................................. 291
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 291
   Example ........................................................................................................ 291
StrPtr::Text() ........................................................................................................ 292
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 292
   Example ........................................................................................................ 292
StrPtr::Value() ........................................................................................................ 293
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 293
   Example ........................................................................................................ 293
StrPtr::XCompare(const StrPtr &) ..................................................................... 294
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 294
   See also ......................................................................................................... 294
   Example ........................................................................................................ 294
StrRef methods ..................................................................................................... 295
StrRef::StrRef() (constructor) ............................................................................. 295
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 295
StrRef::StrRef(const char *) (constructor) ........................................................ 296
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 296
StrRef::StrRef(const char *, int) (constructor) .................................................. 297
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 297
StrRef::StrRef(const StrPtr &) (constructor) ....................................................... 298
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 298
StrRef::StrRef(const StrPtr &, int) (constructor) .............................................. 299
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 299
StrRef::Null() ....................................................................................................... 300
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 300
StrRef::operator=(const StrPtr &) .................................................................... 301
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 301
StrRef::operator=(const char *) ........................................................................ 302
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 302
StrRef::operator+=(int) ....................................................................................... 303
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 303
StrRef::Set(const char *) ................................................................................... 304
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 304
StrRef::Set(const char *, int) ............................................................................ 305
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 305
StrRef::Set(const StrPtr &) ............................................................................... 306
   Notes ............................................................................................................... 306
Example ......................................................................................................................... 306

License Statements ........................................................................................................ 307
About This Manual

This guide contains details about using the Perforce C/C API to create applications that interact correctly with the Perforce server. Be sure to read the code in the API’s header and C files in conjunction with this guide.

Interfaces for C/C++, Java, Perl, Ruby, Python, PHP, and other languages are available from our website:

http://www.perforce.com/product/components/apis

Helix documentation

The following table lists and describes key documents for Helix users, developers, and administrators. For complete information see the following:

http://www.perforce.com/documentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For specific information about…</th>
<th>See this documentation…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to version control concepts and workflows; Helix architecture, and related products.</td>
<td>Introducing Helix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the command-line interface to perform software version management and codeline management; working with Helix streams; jobs, reporting, scripting, and more.</td>
<td>Helix Versioning Engine User Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic workflows using P4V, the cross-platform Helix desktop client.</td>
<td>P4V User Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with personal and shared servers and understanding the distributed versioning features of the Helix Versioning engine.</td>
<td>Using Helix for Distributed Versioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 command line (reference).</td>
<td>P4 Command Reference, p4 help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing and administering the Helix versioning engine, including user management, security settings.</td>
<td>Helix Versioning Engine Administrator Guide: Fundamentals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing and configuring Helix servers (proxies, replicas, and edge servers) in a distributed environment.</td>
<td>Helix Versioning Engine Administrator Guide: Multi-site Deployment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Helix plug-ins and integrations. | IDEs: Using IDE Plug-ins
Defect trackers: Defect Tracking Gateway Guide
Others: online help from the Helix menu or web site |
### Syntax conventions

Helix documentation uses the following syntax conventions to describe command line syntax.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Literal</strong></td>
<td>Monospace font indicates a word or other notation that must be used in the command exactly as shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Italics</em></td>
<td>Italics indicate a parameter for which you must supply specific information. For example, for a serverid parameter, you must supply the id of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-f]</td>
<td>Square brackets indicate that the enclosed elements are optional. Omit the brackets when you compose the command. Elements that are not bracketed are required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>…</td>
<td>Ellipses (…) indicate that the preceding element can be repeated as often as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`element1</td>
<td>element2`</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Please give us feedback

We are interested in receiving opinions on this manual from our users. In particular, we’d like to hear from users who have never used Perforce before. Does this guide teach the topic well? Please let us know what you think; we can be reached at manual@perforce.com.

If you need assistance, or wish to provide feedback about any of our products, contact support@perforce.com.
Chapter 1  Overview

Release compatibility of the API

The Perforce C/C++ API is subject to change from release to release, and is not guaranteed to be source-code compatible from one release to the next. However, applications that you create using the API can run against previous releases of Perforce and will probably run against later releases of Perforce.

Support for specific features depends on the version of Perforce and the API that you use.

Purpose of the API

The Perforce C/C++ API enables you to create applications that interact with end users, send commands to the Perforce server and process data returned from the versioning service. The API is a programmatic interface, and does not send commands directly to the server.

Architecture of the API

The basic client session is managed by a C++ class called ClientApi. All user interaction is channeled through the ClientUser C++ class. The default methods of ClientUser implement the p4 command line interface. To create custom client applications, create subclasses based on ClientUser.

API files

The Perforce C/C++ API consists of header files, link libraries, and the reference implementation of the ClientUser class. Only the libraries are platform-specific.

The API is packaged as an archive or zip file. The source code for the libraries is proprietary and is not included. To download the API, go to the Perforce FTP site and download the file for your platform. For example, to obtain the OS X version using a Web browser, use the following URL:

ftp://ftp.perforce.com/perforce/r15.1/bin.macosx105x86_64/

and download p4api.tgz.

(Specific API files can vary from release to release, and so are not individually described here.)
Compiling and linking Perforce applications

The following sections tell you how to build your application on the target platform.

To build `p4api.cc`, include `clientapi.h`, which includes all the necessary header files for the sample client application.

**Link order**

The link libraries distributed with P4API must be linked explicitly in the following order.

- `libclient.a`
- `librpc.a`
- `libsupp.a`
- `libp4sslstub.a`

In the Windows distribution, these files are named `libclient.lib`, `librpc.lib`, `libsupp.lib`, and `libp4sslstub.lib` respectively.

**SSL support**

The Perforce C/C++ API can be configured to support encrypted connections to the Perforce servers. To enable this support you must replace the bundled `libp4sslstub.a` (on Windows, `libp4sslstub.lib`) with copies of the OpenSSL libraries. (If you do not intend to use your application with a Perforce Server that supports encryption then you may simply compile the application with the supplied stub library.)

OpenSSL libraries are available from many sources; the most up-to-date is from [http://www.openssl.org/](http://www.openssl.org/).

**OpenSSL Library Version**

We recommend keeping current with the latest minor version matching the version referenced in the Perforce C/C++ API file `librpc.a` (or `librpc.lib` on Windows). To see which version is referenced by the library, run the following command on UNIX variants or Macintosh:

```
strings librpc.a | grep ^OpenSSL
```

On Windows:

```
strings librpc.lib | findstr /B OpenSSL
```

This command will produce an output similar to the following:

OpenSSL 1.0.1p 9 Jul 2015

In this example, you would use the latest minor version of OpenSSL that matches version 1.0.1.
Link order for SSL support

To enable SSL support, replace the stub with the ssl and crypto libraries from OpenSSL, resulting in the following link order:

- libclient.a
- librpc.a
- libsupp.a
- libssl.a
- libcrypto.a

On Windows, the ssl and crypto OpenSSL libraries are named ssleay32.lib and libeay32.lib respectively.

Compiler support

UNIX

For all UNIX platforms, you can use the gcc compiler to compile client applications with the Perforce C/C++ API.

Note that clientapi.h includes stdhdrs.h, which might attempt to set platform-specific defines. To ensure these defines are set properly, compile with the -DOS_XXX flag, where XXX is the platform name as specified by Perforce. (Use p4 -V to display the platform name; for example, for LINUX52X86, specify -DOS_LINUX.)

Some platforms require extra link libraries for sockets. Solaris requires the following compiler flags:

-socket -lnsl

Linux

Some platforms require extra link libraries for runtime support. Linux requires the following compiler flag:

-lrt

Windows

Using Microsoft Visual Studio (VC++), compile your client application with the following flags:

/DOS_NT /MT /DCASE_INSENSITIVE

For debugging, compile with the /MTd flag for multithreading. Do not compile with /MD or /MDd, because these flags can cause undefined behavior.

Link with the following libraries:

- libcmt.lib
- oldnames.lib
• kernel32.lib
• ws2_32.lib
• advapi32.lib

Sample Jamfile

The following example shows a Jamfile that can be used to build p4api.cc, a Perforce application. (The example that the API is installed in the api subdirectory.)

CFLAGS = -g -D_GNU_SOURCE ;
LINK = c ;OPTIM = ;
Main p4api : p4api.cc ;
ObjectHdrs p4api : api ;
LinkLibraries p4api : api/libclient.a api/librpc.a api/libsupp.a
    api/libp4sslstub.a;

For more about jam, see “Building with Jam” on page 5.

Sample Makefile

The following is a GNU make file for building p4api.cc, a Perforce application. (The example assumes the API is installed in the api subdirectory.)

SOURCES = p4api.cc
INCLUDES = -Iapi
OBJECTS = ${SOURCES:.cc=.o}
LIBRARIES = api/libclient.a api/librpc.a api/libsupp.a
    api/libp4sslstub.a
BINARY = p4api
RM = /bin/rm -f

C = c
CFLAGS = -c -g -D_GNU_SOURCE
LINK = c
LINKFLAGS =

.cc.o :
    ${C} ${CFLAGS} $< ${INCLUDES}

${BINARY} : ${OBJECTS}
    ${LINK} -o ${BINARY} ${OBJECTS} ${LIBRARIES}

clean :
    - ${RM} ${OBJECTS} ${BINARY}

Building with Jam

Jam is a build tool, similar in its role to the more familiar make. Jamfiles are to jam as makefiles are to make.
Jam is an Open Source project sponsored by Perforce Software. Jam documentation, source code, and links to precompiled binaries are available from the Jam product information page at:

http://www.perforce.com/documentation/jam

The P4API distribution contains the necessary header files (*.h) and libraries (libclient.a, librpc.a, libsupp.a, libp4sslstub.a) required to compile and link a client application. The distribution also includes a sample application in C++, p4api.cc.

In general, the process is similar to most APIs: compile your application sources, then link them with the API libraries. The precise steps needed vary somewhat from platform to platform.

The sample application p4api.cc is a portable, minimal Perforce application, which we can use as an example. For purposes of this example, assume a Linux system.

Compile and link p4api.cc as follows:

```
$ cc -c -o p4api.o -D_GNU_SOURCE -O2 -DOS_LINUX -DOS_LINUX24
 > -DOS_LINUXX86 -DOS_LINUX24X86 -I. -Imsgs -Isupport -Isys p4api.cc
$ gcc -o p4api p4api.o libclient.a librpc.a libsupp.a libp4sslstub.a
```

The preprocessor definitions (-Ddefinition) vary from platform to platform.

In order to build the example across a wide variety of platforms, the API distribution also contains two "Jamfiles" (Jamrules and Jamfile), that describe how to build the sample application on each platform.

**Building the sample application**

Once you have Jam on your system, you can use it to build the p4api application. On some platforms, jam needs an extra hint about the operating system version. For instance, on RedHat Linux 7.1, with a 2.4 linux kernel, use OSVER=24:
$ jam
Set OSVER to 42/52 [RedHat M.n], or 22/24 [uname -r M.n]

$ uname -r
2.4.2-2

$ jam -s OSVER=24
...found 121 target(s)...
...updating 2 target(s)...
C++ p4api.o
Link p4api
Chmod1 p4api
...updated 2 target(s)...

$ p4api info
User name: you
Client name: you:home:sunflower
Client host: sunflower
Client root: /home/you
Current directory: /home/you/tmp/p4api
Client address: 207.46.230.220:35012
Server address: sunflower:1674
Server root: /home/p4/root
Server date: 2009/09/24 12:15:39 PDT
Server license: Your Company 10 users (expires 2010/02/10)
Server license-ip: 10.0.0.2

As shown in the example above, jam does not, by default, show the actual commands used in the build (unless one of them fails). To see the exact commands jam generates, use the -o file option. This causes jam to write the updating actions to file, suitable for execution by a shell.

To illustrate; first, invoke jam clean to undo the build:

$ jam -s OSVER=42 clean
...found 1 target(s)...
...updating 1 target(s)...
Clean clean
...updated 1 target(s)...

Then use jam -o build_sample to create the build file:
$ jam -s OSVER=42 -o build_sample
...found 121 target(s)...
...updating 2 target(s)...
C++ p4api.o
Link p4api
Chmod1 p4api
...updated 2 target(s)...

$ cat build_sample
cc -c -o p4api.o -O2 -DOS_LINUX -DOS_LINUX42 -DOS_LINUXX86 -DOS_LINUX42X86 \ -DOS_LINUX42X86 -I. -lmsg -lsupport -lsys p4api.cc
gcc -o p4api p4api.o libclient.a librpc.a libsupp.a libp4sslstub.a
chomd 711 p4api

The generated build_sample can then be executed by a shell:

/bin/sh build_sample

to produce the executable, which you can test by running p4api info or most other Perforce commands:

$ p4api changes -m 1
Change 372 on 2002/09/23 by you@you:home:sunflower 'Building API'

As you can see, p4api is a usable full-featured command line Perforce client (very similar to the p4 command). The example’s functionality comes from the default implementation of the ClientUser class, linked from the libclient.a library and the rest of the library code, for which source code is not included. The source for the default implementation is provided in the P4API distribution as clientuser.cc.

**Sending commands to the versioning service**

Perforce applications interact with the versioning service by:

1. Initializing a connection.
2. Sending commands.
3. Closing the connection.

The Perforce server does not maintain any kind of session identifier. The server identifies the sender of commands by its combination of Perforce user name and client workspace. Different processes that use the same combination of user and workspace are not distinguished by the Perforce server. To prevent processes from interfering with each other when submitting changelists, be sure to use separate client specifications for each process. If you need to create large numbers of processes, consider creating a cache of client specifications and serving them to processes as required.
Perforce settings on the user’s machine

To determine which server and depot are accessed and how files are mapped, the standard classes in the API observe the Perforce settings on the user’s machine. Assuming the workstation is configured correctly, your application does not need to provide logic that specifies server, port, workspace, or user.

To override the user’s settings, your application can call Set methods.

Settings take precedence as follows, highest to lowest:

1. Values set within a Perforce application
2. Values in configuration files (**P4CONFIG**)
3. Values set as environment variables at the operating system prompt
4. Variables residing in the registry (set using the **p4 set** or **p4 set -s** commands on Windows client machines)
5. Default values defined by Perforce software or gathered from the system

Connecting to the server

To connect to the Perforce server for which the client computer is configured, your client application must call the **client.Init()** method; for example:

```c
client.Init( &e );
if ( e.Test() )
{
    printf("Failed to connect:\n" );
    ErrorLog::Abort(); // Displays the error and exits
}
printf( "Connected OK\n" );
```

Your program only needs to connect once. After connecting, the application can issue as many Perforce commands as required. If you intend to use tagged output, your program must call **client.SetProtocol()** before calling **client.Init()**. For details about using tagged output, refer to “Tagged data” on page 10.

Displaying Perforce forms

Perforce client commands that collect a large amount of input from the user (such as **p4 branch**, **p4 change**, **p4 label**) use ASCII forms. To interact with your end user, your client application program can display Perforce ASCII forms such as changelists, client specification, and so on. To display a form and collect user input, call **ClientUser::Edit()**, which puts the form into a temporary file and invokes the text editor that is configured for the client machine.

All form-related commands accept the batch mode flags -o and -i:

- -o causes the form to be passed to **ClientUser::OutputInfo()**.
- -i causes the form to be read with **ClientUser::InputData()**.
These flags allow changes to the form to occur between separate invocations of the `p4` application, rather than during a single invocation. (For details about the `-o` and `-i` global options, see the `P4 Command Reference`.)

All form-related commands can return a form descriptor. Your application can use this descriptor to parse forms into constituent variables and to format them from their constituent variables. The `specstring` protocol variable enables this support in the server. Form descriptors are best used with the `tag` protocol variable, which causes the form data to appear using `ClientUser::OutputStat()` rather than `OutputInfo()`.

Select the protocol with `ClientApi::SetProtocol()` as follows:

```c
client.SetProtocol( "specstring", "" );
client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" );
```

To obtain the descriptor containing the results of the method call, your application must pass a `StrDict` object to `ClientUser::OutputStat()`. Your application can override the `OutputStat()` method in a class derived from `ClientUser`. The Perforce C/C++ API calls this derived method, passing it the output from the command.

### Sending commands

The following example illustrates how you set up arguments and execute the `p4 fstat` command on a file named `Jam.html`.

```c
char file[] = "Jam.html";
char *filep = &file[0];
client.SetArgv( 1, &filep );
client.Run( "fstat", &ui );
```

For commands with more arguments, use an approach like the following:

```c
char    *argv[] = { "-C", "-l", 0, 0 };
int     argc    = 2;
char    *file   = "Jam.html";
argv[ argc++ ]  = file;
client.SetArgv( argc, argv );
client.Run( "fstat", &ui );
```

### Processing data from the server

The Perforce server (release 99.2 and higher) can return tagged data (name-value pairs) for some commands. The following sections tell you how to handle tagged and untagged data.

#### Tagged data

The following example shows data returned in tagged format by `p4 -Ztag clients` command. (The `-Z` flag specifies that tagged data is to be returned; this flag is unsupported and intended for debugging use.)
To enable the Perforce server to return tagged data, your application must call `SetProtocol("tag", ")` before connecting to the server. To extract values from tagged data, use the `GetVars` method.

The following Perforce commands can return tagged output. A release number, when present, indicates the first Perforce server release that supports tagged output for the command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Release</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p4 add</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 branch -o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 branches</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 change -o</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 changes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 client -o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 clients</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 counter</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 counters</td>
<td>(2000.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 delete</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 describe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 depots</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 diff</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 diff2</td>
<td>(2004.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 edit</td>
<td>(2005.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p4 filelog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tagged output of some commands may have changed since the command’s first appearance in this table. The output of `p4 resolve` and `p4 diff` are not fully tagged. For complete details, see the release notes:

http://www.perforce.com/perforce/r16.2/user/p4apinotes.txt
To obtain output in the form used by earlier revisions of Perforce, set the api variable according to the notes for `SetProtocol()`.

**Untagged Data**

To handle untagged data, create a subclass of `ClientUser` for every type of data required and provide alternate implementations of `ClientUser::OutputInfo()`, `OutputBinary()`, `OutputText()`, and `OutputStat()`.

**Disconnecting from the server**

After your application has finished interacting with the Perforce server, it must disconnect as illustrated below:

```c
client.Final( &e );
e.Abort();
```

To ensure the application can exit successfully, make sure to call `ClientApi::Final()` before calling the destructor.

**Performing file I/O**

The default client file I/O implementation returns a `FileSys` object, which is described in `filesys.h`. To intercept client workspace file I/O, replace the `FileSys *ClientUser::File()` method by subclassing `ClientUser`.

The following example illustrates how you can override `FileSys`.
```cpp
#include "p4/clientapi.h"
class MyFileSys : public FileSys {
    public:
        MyFileSys();
        ~MyFileSys();

        virtual void    Open( FileOpenMode mode, Error *e );
        virtual void    Write( const char *buf, int len, Error *e );
        virtual int     Read( char *buf, int len, Error *e );
        virtual int     ReadLine( StrBuf *buf, Error *e );
        virtual void    Close( Error *e );
        virtual int     Stat();
        virtual int     StatModTime();
        virtual void    Truncate( Error *e );
        virtual void    Unlink( Error *e = 0 );
        virtual void    Rename( FileSys *target, Error *e );
        virtual void    Chmod( FilePerm perms, Error *e );

    protected:
        int nchars;
    }

MyFileSys::MyFileSys()
{
    nchars = 0;
}

MyFileSys::~MyFileSys()
{
    printf( "Number of characters transferred = %d\n", nchars );
}

void MyFileSys::Open( FileOpenMode mode, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Open()\n" );
}

void MyFileSys::Write( const char *buf, int len, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Write()\n" );
    printf("%s", buf );
    nchars = nchars + len;
}

int MyFileSys::Read( char *buf, int len, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Read()\n" );
    return 0;
}

int MyFileSys::ReadLine( StrBuf *buf, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::ReadLine()\n" );
    return 0;
}
```
void MyFileSys::Close( Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Close()\n" );
}

int MyFileSys::Stat()
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Stat()\n" );
    return 0;
}

int MyFileSys::StatModTime()
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::StatModTime()\n" );
    return 0;
}

void MyFileSys::Truncate( Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Truncate()\n" );
}

void MyFileSys::Unlink( Error *e = 0 )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Unlink()\n" );
}

void MyFileSys::Rename( FileSys *target, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Rename()\n" );
}

void MyFileSys::Chmod( FilePerm perms, Error *e )
{
    printf( "In MyFileSys::Chmod()\n" );
}

class ClientUserSubclass : public ClientUser {
    public:
        virtual FileSys *File( FileSysType type );
};

FileSys *ClientUserSubclass::File( FileSysType type )
{
    return new MyFileSys;
}
```c
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    ClientUserSubclass ui;
    ClientApi client;
    Error e;

    char force[] = "-f";
    char file[] = "hello.c";
    char *args[2] = { &force[0], &file[0] };

    // Connect to server
    client.Init( &e );
    e.Abort();

    // Run the command "sync -f hello.c"
    client.SetArgv( 2, &args[0] );
    client.Run( "sync", &ui );

    // Close connection
    client.Final( &e );
    e.Abort();
    return 0;
}
```

The preceding program produces the following output when you run it.

```
% ls -l hello.c
-r--r--r--    1 member   team           41 Jul 30 16:57 hello.c
% cat hello.c
main()
{
    printf( "Hello World!\n" );
}
% samplefilesys
//depot/main/hello.c#1 - refreshing /work/main/hello.c
In MyFileSys::Stat()
In MyFileSys::Open()
In MyFileSys::Write()
main()
{
    printf( "Hello World!\n" );
}
In MyFileSys::Close()
Number of characters transferred = 41
```

### Handling errors

To encapsulate error handling in a maintainable way, subclass `ClientUser` at least once for every command you want to run and handle errors in the `HandleError()` method of the derived class.
To best handle the formatting of error text, parse the error text, looking for substrings of anticipated errors, and display the rest. For example:

```c++
void P4CmdFstat::HandleError(Error *e)
{
    StrBuf m;
    e->Fmt( &m );
    if ( strstr( m.Text(), "file(s) not in client view." ) )
        e->Clear();
    else if ( strstr( m.Text(), "no such file(s)" ) )
        e->Clear();
    else if ( strstr( m.Text(), "access denied" ) )
        e->Clear();
    else
        this->e = *e;
}
```

**Connection errors**

If any error occurs when attempting to connect with the Perforce server, the `ClientApi::Init()` method returns an error code in its `Error` parameter.

**Server errors**

The `ClientApi::Final()` method returns any I/O errors that occurred during `ClientApi::Run()` in its `Error` parameter. `ClientApi::Final()` returns a non-zero value if any I/O errors occurred or if `ClientUser::OutputError()` was called (reporting server errors) during the command run.

To report errors generated by the server during an operation, your application can call the `ClientUser::HandleError()` method. The default implementation of `HandleError()` is to format the error message and call `ClientUser::OutputError()`, which, by default, writes the message to standard output. `HandleError()` has access to the raw `Error` object, which can be examined with the methods defined in `error.h`. Prior to release 99.1, Perforce servers invoked `OutputError()` directly with formatted error text.

**Class overviews**

The following classes comprise the Perforce API. Public methods for these classes are documented in Chapter 3, “Public Methods Reference” on page 21.

**ClientApi - Perforce server connections and commands**

The `ClientApi` class represents a connection with the Perforce server.

Member functions in this class are used to establish and terminate the connection with the server, establish the settings and protocols to use while running commands, and run Perforce commands over the connection.
I/O is handled by a `ClientUser` object, and errors are captured in an `Error` object. A `ClientApi` object maintains information about client-side settings (P4PORT, etc.) and protocol information, such as the server version, and whether "tagged" output is enabled.

`ClientApi` does not include any virtual functions, and typically does not need to be subclassed.

Any Perforce command that is executed must be invoked through `ClientApi::Run()` after first opening a connection using `ClientApi::Init()`. A single connection can be used to invoke multiple commands by calling `Run()` multiple times after a single `Init()`; this approach provides faster performance than using multiple connections.

### ClientProgress - progress indicators for Perforce commands

The `ClientProgress` class introduced in 2012.2 provides a means to report on the progress of running commands; you can customize this behavior by subclassing `ClientUser` and `ClientProgress`.

In `ClientUser`, implement `ClientUser::CreateProgress()` and `ClientUser::ProgressIndicator()`. In `ClientProgress`, implement `ClientProgress::Description()`, `ClientProgress::Total()`, `ClientProgress::Update()`, and `ClientProgress::Done()`.

The methods of your `ClientProgress` object will be called during the life of a server command. Usually, `Description()` is called first with a description and a units from the server; the units of measure apply to the `Total()` and `Update()` methods. `Total()` is called if a there is a known upper bound to the number of units, while `Update()` is called from time to time as progress is made. If your `Update()` implementation returns non-zero, the API assumes the user has also attempted to cancel the operation. `Done()` is called last, with the `fail` argument being non-zero in case of failure. When the command is complete, the API destroys the object by calling the destructor.

Default implementations are used in the `p4` command-line client, and report on the progress of `p4 -I submit` and `p4 -I sync -q`.

### ClientUser - I/O for Perforce commands

The `ClientUser` class is used for all client-side input and output. This class implements methods that return output from the server to the user after a command is invoked, and gather input from the user when needed.

Member functions in this class are used to format and display server output, invoke external programs (such as text editors, diff tools, and merge tools), gather input for processing by the server, and to handle errors.

Customized functionality in a Perforce application is most typically implemented by subclassing `ClientUser`. In order to enable such customization, nearly all of `ClientUser`'s methods are virtual. The default implementations are used in the `p4` command-line client.

### Error - collect and report layered errors

Member functions in this class are used to store error messages, along with information about generic type and severity, format error messages into a form suitable for display to an end user, or marshal them into a form suitable for transferring over a network.
**Error** objects are used to collect information about errors that occur while running a Perforce command.

When a connection is opened with `ClientApi::Init()`, a reference to an **Error** object is passed as an argument to `Init()`. This **Error** object then accumulates any errors that occur; a single **Error** object can hold information about multiple errors. The **Error** can then be checked, and its contents reported if necessary.

Although **Error** itself does not provide any virtual methods that can be re-implemented, the manner in which errors are handled can be changed by re-implementing `ClientUser::HandleError()`. The default behavior for handling errors typically consists of simply formatting and displaying the messages, but **Error** objects maintain additional information, such as severity levels, which can be used to handle errors more intelligently.

**ErrorLog - output error messages**

The **ErrorLog** class is used to report layered errors, either by displaying error messages to stderr, or by redirecting them to logfiles. On UNIX systems, error messages can also be directed to the syslog daemon.

**FileSys - Perforce file I/O**

The **FileSys** class provides a platform-independent set of methods used to create, read and write files to disk.

You can intercept the file I/O and implement your own client workspace file access routines by replacing `FileSys *ClientUser::File()` in a `ClientUser` subclass.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Note</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replacing the existing I/O routines is non-trivial. Your replacement routines must handle all special cases, including cross-platform file issues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unless your application has highly specialized requirements, (for instance, performing all file I/O in memory rather than on disk), this approach is not recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you intend to replace `File()`, all of the virtual methods documented are required. The non virtual methods are not required and not documented.

**Ignore - support for rejecting files**

The **Ignore** class has two methods, `Ignore::Reject()` and `Ignore::RejectCheck()`. Both methods are used by applications to determine whether files destined to be opened for add will be rejected due to matching an entry in an ignore files.

**KeepAlive - support for client-side disconnection**

The **KeepAlive** class has only one method, `KeepAlive::IsAlive()`. The method is used by applications to support client-side command termination.
Chapter 2. Application Programming

MapApi - logic for view mappings

The MapApi class allows a client application to duplicate the logic used by the server when interpreting and combining view mappings such as branch views, client views, and protections.

Each MapApi object represents a single mapping that is built by calling MapApi::Insert() to add new lines. A file can be translated through the mapping or tested for inclusion by calling MapApi::Translate(). Two MapApi objects may be combined into a single new MapApi object (for example, a client view and a protection table may be joined into a single mapping that represents all files in the client view that are included in the protection table) by calling MapApi::Join().

Options - parse and store command line options

The Options class encapsulates functions useful for parsing command line flags, and also provides a means of storing flag values.

Sample code is provided to illustrate how Options::GetValue() and Options::Parse() work together to parse command line options.

ServerHelperApi - helper methods for creating personal servers

The ServerHelperApi class is used to create personal servers. This class is only necessary when initially creating a local server; once it is created you can use the standard ClientApi and ClientUser classes to operate against the server.

Signaler - interrupt handling

The Signaler class enables the API programmer to register functions that are to be called when the client application receives an interrupt signal. The Signaler class maintains a list of registered functions and calls each one in turn.

By default, after all of the registered functions have been executed, the process exits, returning -1 to the operating system.

StrBuf - string manipulation

The StrBuf class is the preferred general string manipulation class. This class manages the memory associated with a string, including allocating new memory or freeing old memory as required.

The StrBuf class is derived from the StrPtr class, and makes heavy use of the buffer and length members inherited from the StrPtr class. The buffer member of a StrBuf instance is a pointer to the first byte in the string. The length member of a StrBuf instance is the length of the string.

Most member functions maintain the string pointed to by the buffer member of a StrBuf as a null-terminated string. However, the Clear member function does not set the first byte of the string to a null byte, nor does the Extend member function append a null byte to an extended string. If you need to maintain a string as null-terminated when using the Clear() and Extend() member functions, follow the calls to Clear() and Extend() with calls to Terminate().
A number of member functions move the string pointed to by a `StrBuf`'s buffer, and change the buffer member to point to the new location. For this reason, do not cache the pointer. Use `StrPtr::Text()` whenever the pointer a `StrBuf`'s buffer is required.

**StrDict - field/value manipulation**

The `StrDict` class provides a dictionary object of `StrPtr` s with a simple Get/Put interface. This class contains abstract methods and therefore cannot be instantiated, but its subclasses adhere to the basic interface documented here.

`ClientApi` is a descendant of `StrDict`; most notably, the `StrDict::SetArgv()` method is used to set the arguments to a Perforce command before executing it with `ClientApi::Run()`.

The `ClientUser::OutputStat()` method takes a `StrDict` as an argument; the `StrDict` methods are therefore necessary to process data with `OutputStat()`. Note that pulling information from a `StrDict` is typically easier than trying to parse the text given to `OutputInfo()`.

**StrNum - small numeric strings**

The `StrNum` class, derived from `StrPtr`, is designed to hold a small string representing a number. Like a `StrBuf`, it handles its own memory. Unlike a `StrBuf`, it does not dynamically resize itself, and is limited to 24 characters, meaning that the largest number that can be represented by a `StrNum` is 999999999999999999999999.

**StrOps - string operations**

`StrOps` is a memberless class containing static methods for performing operations on strings.

**StrPtr - text operations**

The `StrPtr` class is a very basic pointer/length pair used to represent text.

This class provides a number of methods for comparison and reporting, but it is not in itself very useful for storing data; the `StrBuf` child class is a more practical means of storing data, as it manages its own memory.

**StrRef - refer to existing strings**

The `StrRef` class is a simple pointer/length pair representing a string. The `StrRef` class is is derived from `StrPtr` and does not add a great deal of new functionality to that class, with the exception of methods that make the pointer mutable (and therefore usable), whereas a base `StrPtr` is read-only.

As its name suggests, a `StrRef` serves as a reference to existing data, as the class does not perform its own memory allocation. The `StrBuf` class is most useful when storing and manipulating existing strings.
ClientApi methods

ClientApi::DefineClient( const char *, Error * )

Sets P4CLIENT in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To make the new P4CLIENT setting apply to the next command executed with Run(), DefineClient() sets the value in the registry and then calls SetClient().

Example

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application start up with a default P4CLIENT setting.

```c
client.Init( &e );
client.DefineClient( "default_workspace", &e );
```
### ClientApi::DefineHost( const char *, Error * )

Sets **P4HOST** in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

To make the new **P4HOST** setting apply to the next command executed with `Run()`, `DefineHost()` sets the value in the registry and then calls `SetHost()`.

**Example**

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application start up with a default **P4HOST** setting.

```c
client.Init( &e );
client.DefineHost( "default_host", &e );
```
ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile( const char *, Error * )

Sets P4IGNORE in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To make the new P4IGNORE setting apply to the next command executed with Run(), DefineIgnoreFile() sets the value in the registry and then calls SetIgnoreFile().

See also

ClientApi::GetIgnore() ClientApi::GetIgnoreFile() ClientApi::SetIgnoreFile()

Example

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application start up with a default P4IGNORE setting.

```c
#include "clientapi.h"

int main()
{
    ClientApi client;
    Error e;

    client.Init( &e );
    client.DefineIgnoreFile( ".p4ignore", &e );
}
```
ClientApi::DefinePassword( const char *, Error * )

Sets P4PASSWD in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new P4PASSWD setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To make the new P4PASSWD setting apply to the next command executed with Run(), DefinePassword() sets the value in the registry and then calls SetPassword().

DefinePassword() does not define a new server-side password for the user.

Call DefinePassword() with either the plaintext password, or its MD5 hash

Example

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application start up with a default P4PASSWD setting.

```
client.Init( &e );
client.DefinePassword( "default_pass", &e );
```
**ClientApi::DefinePort (const char *, Error *)**

Sets P4PORT in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new P4PORT setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

In order to make the new P4PORT setting apply to the next client connection opened with `Init()`, `DefinePort()` sets the value in the registry and then calls `SetPort()`.

**Example**

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application automatically set itself to access a backup server if the primary server fails to respond. (This example assumes the existence of a backup server that perfectly mirrors the primary server.)

```cpp
client.Init( &e );
if ( e.IsFatal() )
{
    e.Clear();
    ui.OutputError( "No response from server - switching to backup!\n" );
    client.DefinePort( "backup:1666", &e );
    client.Init( &e );
}
```

The first command to which the primary server fails to respond results in the error message and the program reinitializing the client to point to the server at **backup:1666**. Subsequent commands do not display the warning because the new P4PORT value has been set in the registry.
ClientApi::DefineUser( const char *, Error *)

Sets P4USER in the Windows registry and applies the setting immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To make the new P4USER setting apply to the next command executed with Run(), DefineUser() sets the value in the registry and then calls SetUser().

Example

The following code illustrates how this method might be used to make a Windows client application start up with a default P4USER setting.

```c
client.Init( &e );
client.DefineUser( "default_user", &e );
```
ClientApi::Dropped()

Check if connection is no longer usable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int nonzero if the connection has dropped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Dropped() is usually called after Run(); it then checks whether the command completed successfully. If the Init() is only followed by one Run(), as in p4api.cc, calling Final() and then checking the Error is sufficient to see whether the connection was dropped. However, if you plan to make many calls to Run() after one call to Init(), Dropped() provides a way to check that the commands are completing without actually cleaning up the connection with Final().

**Example**

The Dropped() method is useful if you want to reuse a client connection multiple times, and need to make sure that the connection is still alive.

For example, an application for stress-testing a Perforce server might run "p4 have" 10,000 times or until the connection dies:

```c
ClientApi client;
MyClientUser ui; //this ClientUser subclass doesn't output anything.
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
int count = 0;
while ( !( client.Dropped() ) && count < 10000 )
{
    count++;
    client.Run( "have", &ui );
}
printf( "Checked have list %d times.\n", count );
client.Final( &e ); // Clean up connection.
```

If the Dropped() result is true, the while loop ends. The actual error message remains inaccessible until after the call to client.Final() to close the connection and store the error.
ClientApi::Final( Error * )  
Close connection and return error count.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *e, an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int, final number of errors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Call this method after you are finished using the ClientApi object in order to clean up the connection. Every call to Init() must eventually be followed by exactly one call to Final().

**Example**

The following example is a slight modification of p4api.cc, and reports the number of errors before the program exits:

```c
client.Init( &e );
client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
client.Run( argv[1], &ui );
printf( "There were %d errors.\n", client.Final( &e ) );
```
ClientApi::GetClient()

Get current client setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the client setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The return value of GetClient() is a fixed reference to this ClientApi object’s setting.

Assigning the return value to a StrPtr results in a StrPtr containing a Text() value that changes if the ClientApi object’s client setting changes.

Assigning the return value to a StrBuf copies the text in its entirety for future access, rather than simply storing a reference to data that might change later.

Under some circumstances, GetClient() calls GetHost() and returns that value - specifically, if no suitable P4CLIENT value is available in the environment, or previously set with SetClient(). (This is why, under the Perforce client, client name defaults to the host name if not explicitly set.)

In some instances, GetHost() does not return valid results until after a call to Init() - see the GetHost() documentation for details.

Example

This example demonstrates the use of GetClient() and the difference between StrPtr’s and StrBuf’s.

```c
ClientApi client;
StrPtr p;
StrBuf b;

client.Init();
client.SetClient( "one" );
p = client.GetClient();
b = client.GetClient();
client.SetClient("two");

printf( "Current client %s = %s\n", client.GetClient().Text(), p.Text() );
printf( "Previous client setting was %s\n", b.Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

Current client two = two
Previous client setting was one
**ClientApi::GetConfig()**

Get current configuration file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the config file setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See **GetClient()** for more about the StrPtr return value.

If the P4CONFIG has not been set, **GetConfig()** returns “noconfig”.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the usage of **GetConfig()**.

```c
ClientApi client;
printf( "Current P4CONFIG is %s\n", client.GetConfig().Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code without having specified a configuration file produces the following output:

```
C:\perforce> a.out
Current P4CONFIG is noconfig
```
ClientApi::GetCwd()

Get current working directory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a reference to the name of the current directory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

If the working directory has been set by a call to SetCwd() or SetCwdNoReload(), subsequent calls to GetCwd() return that setting regardless of the actual working directory.

Example

The following example demonstrates the usage of GetCwd().

ClientApi client;
printf( "Current directory is %s\n", client.GetCwd().Text() );

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
C:\perforce> a.out
Current directory is c:\perforce
```
**ClientApi::GetHost()**

Get client hostname.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
<td>Arguments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Returns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See **GetClient()** for more about the *StrPtr* return value.

In some instances, **GetHost()** is not valid until after the network connection has been established with **Init()**. **GetHost()** attempts to pull its value from earlier **SetHost()** calls, then from **P4HOST** in the environment, and then from the value of "hostname" returned by the client OS. If none of these is applicable, a reverse DNS lookup is performed, but the lookup will not work unless the connection has been established with **Init()**.

To guarantee valid results, call **GetHost()** only after **Init()** or **SetHost()**. As **GetHost()** may sometimes be called during the execution of **GetClient()**, this warning applies to both methods.

As noted above, **GetHost()** does not necessarily return the actual hostname of the machine if it has been overridden by **P4HOST** or an earlier call to **SetHost()**.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the usage of **GetHost()**.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
client.Init();

printf( "Client hostname is %s\n", client.GetHost().Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
shire% a.out
Client hostname is shire
```
ClientApi::GetIgnore()

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>Ignore *i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If P4IGNORE is not set, no paths are ignored.

See also

ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile() ClientApi::GetIgnoreFile() ClientApi::SetIgnoreFile()

Example

This example demonstrates the use of GetIgnore().

```c++
if ( client->GetIgnore()->Reject( *clientPath,
                                       client->GetIgnoreFile() ) )
{
    /* handling for ignored file */
}
```
ClientApi::GetIgnoreFile()

Get the full path name of the ignore file used for the current connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the path of the ignore file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

If the P4IGNORE is unset, GetIgnoreFile() returns an uninitialized StrPtr.

See also

ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile() ClientApi::GetIgnore() ClientApi::SetIgnoreFile()

Example

This example demonstrates the use of GetIgnoreFile().

```c
#include "clientapi.h"

int main()
{
    ClientApi client;
    printf("The current ignore file is '%s'\n", client.GetIgnoreFile().Text());
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces output similar to the following:

The current ignore file is .p4ignore
ClientApi::GetOs()

Get name of client operating system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the OS string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

GetOs() returns one of “UNIX”, “vms”, “NT”, “Mac”, or null.

Example

The following example demonstrates the usage of GetOs().

```c
ClientApi client;
printf( "Client OS is %s\n", client.GetOs().Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code under Windows produces the following output:

```
C:\perforce> a.out
Client OS is NT
```

Executing the preceding code on a UNIX machine produces the following output:

```
shire$ a.out
Client OS is UNIX
```
ClientApi::GetPassword()

Get password setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

This method returns the password currently set on the client, which may or may not be the one set on the server for this user. The command "p4 passwd" sets P4PASSWD on the client machine to an MD5 hash of the actual password, in which case GetPassword() returns this MD5 hash rather than the plaintext version.

However, if the user sets P4PASSWD directly with the plaintext version, GetPassword() returns that plaintext version. In both instances, the result is the same as that displayed by "p4 set" or an equivalent command that displays the value of the P4PASSWD environment variable.

SetPassword() overrides the P4PASSWD value, and subsequent GetPassword() calls return the new value set by SetPassword() rather than the one in the environment.

Example

The following example demonstrates the usage of GetPassword().

```c
ClientApi client;
printf( "Your password is %s\n", client.GetPassword().Text() );
```

The following session illustrates the effect of password settings on GetPassword():

```
p4 set P4PASSWD=p455w04d
> a.out
Your password is p455w04d

>p4 passwd
Enter new password:
Re-enter new password:
Password updated.

> a.out
Your password is 6F577E10961C8F7B519501097131787C
```
ClientApi::GetPort()

Get current port setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the port setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

If the environment variable P4PORT is unset, GetPort() sets the port to the default value of perforce:1666.

Example

The following example demonstrates the usage of GetPort().

```c
ClientApi client;

printf( "You're looking for a server at %s\n", \n    client.GetPort().Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
You're looking for a server at perforce:1666
```
ClientApi::GetProtocol( const char * )

Get protocol information for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If the variable is unset, the return value is null. If there is a value, it will be a number in most cases, but in the form of a StrPtr rather than an int.

Call GetProtocol() only after a call to Run(), because protocol information is not available until after a call to Run(). Calling GetProtocol() before Run() results in a return value of null, which looks misleadingly like an indication that the variable is unset.

GetProtocol() reports only on variables set by the server, not variables set by the client with calls to SetProtocol().

Example

The following example code checks whether the server is case-sensitive.

```c
...  
client.Init( &e );
...
client.Run();

if ( client.Dropped() )
{
    client.Final( &e );
}

if ( client.GetProtocol( "nocase" ) )
    printf( "Server case-insensitive.\n" );
else
    printf( "Server is case-sensitive.\n" );
```
ClientApi::GetUser()

Get current user setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a reference to the user setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See getClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.

Example

The following example demonstrates the usage of GetUser().

```c
ClientApi client;
printf( "Your username is %s\n", client.GetUser().Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code as testuser produces the following output:

```
Your username is testuser
```
ClientApi::Init( Error * )

Establish a connection and prepare to run commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Init() must be called to establish a connection before any commands can be sent to the server. Each call to Init() must be followed by exactly one call to Final().

If an error occurs during Init(), it is most likely a connection error, with a severity of E_FATAL.

Example

The following code from p4api.cc opens a connection with Init(), sets arguments, runs a command, and closes the connection with Final().

```c
ClientUser ui;
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );

client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
client.Run( argv[1], &ui );
client.Final( &e );
return 0;
```
ClientApi::Run( const char *, ClientUser * )

Run a Perforce command and return when it completes.

Virtual?            No
Class               ClientApi
Arguments           
                   const char *func  the name of the command to run
                   ClientUser *ui     a pointer to a ClientUser object
Returns             void

Notes

The func argument to Run() is the Perforce command to run, (for instance, info or files). Command arguments are not included and must be set separately with StrDict::SetArgv().

Initialize the connection with Init() before calling Run(), because without a connection, no commands can be sent to the server. Attempting to call Run() before Init() will probably result in a fatal runtime error.

Run() returns only after the command completes. Note that all necessary calls to ClientUser methods are made during the execution of Run(), as dictated by the server.

Example

The code below runs p4 info, using ClientUser::OutputInfo() to display the results to the user. If a subclass of ClientUser is used here as the ui argument, that subclass’s implementation of OutputInfo() is used to display the results of the command.

ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
client.Final( &e );
**ClientApi::SetBreak( KeepAlive *breakCallback )**

Establish a callback that is called every 0.5 seconds during command execution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>ClientApi</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>KeepAlive *breakCallback</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

To establish the callback routine, you must call `SetBreak()` after `ClientApi::Init()`.

**See also**

`KeepAlive::IsAlive()`

**Example**

The following example implements a custom `IsAlive()` that can be called three times before returning 0 and terminating the connection. If the call to run the `changes` command takes less than 1.5 seconds to complete on the server side, the program outputs the list of changes. If the call to run the `changes` command takes more than 1.5 seconds, the connection is interrupted.
#include <clientapi.h>

// subclass KeepAlive to implement a customized IsAlive function.
class MyKeepAlive : public KeepAlive
{
    public:
    int  IsAlive();
};

// Set up the interrupt callback. After being called 3 times,
// interrupt 3 times, interrupt the current server operation.
int   MyKeepAlive::IsAlive()
{
    static int counter = 0;
    if ( ++counter > 3 )
    {
        counter = 0;
        return( 0 );
    }
    return( 1 );
}

// Now test the callback
ClientUser ui;
ClientApi client;
MyKeepAlive cb;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
client.SetBreak( &cb );  // SetBreak must happen after the Init
client.Run( "changes", &ui );
client.Final( &e );
**ClientApi::SetClient( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the client setting to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c the new client setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetClient()` does not permanently set the `P4CLIENT` value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s `Run()` method.

**Example**

The following example displays two client specifications by calling `SetClient()` between `Run()` commands.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb1;
StrBuf sb2;

sb1 = "client_one";
sb2 = "client_two";
args[0] = "-o";

client.SetClient( &sb1 );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "client", &ui );

client.SetClient( &sb2 );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "client", &ui );
```
ClientApi::SetClient( const char * )

Sets the client setting to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new client setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetClient() does not permanently set the P4CLIENT value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s Run() method.

Example

The following example displays two client specifications by calling SetClient() between Run() commands.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

char *args[1];
args[0] = "-o";

client.SetClient( "client_one" );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "client", &ui );

client.SetClient( "client_two" );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "client", &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetCwd( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the working directory to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c the new directory path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*SetCwd()* does not permanently set a new working directory in the client environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this *ClientApi* object’s *Run()* method.

**Example**

The following code sets different working directories and displays them with *p4 info*.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb1;
StrBuf sb2;

sb1 = "C:\one";
sb2 = "C:\two";

client.SetCwd( &sb1 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );

client.SetCwd( &sb2 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
### ClientApi::SetCwd( const char * )

Sets the working directory to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new directory path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes

`SetCwd()` does not permanently set a new working directory in the client environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s `Run()` method.

#### Example

The following code sets different working directories and displays them with `p4 info`.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

client.SetCwd( "C:\one" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );

client.SetCwd( "C:\two" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
ClientApi::SetCwdNoReload( const StrPtr * )

Sets the working directory to be used for this connection without checking P4CONFIG.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetCwdNoReload() does not permanently set a new working directory in the client environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s Run() method.

Unlike SetCwd(), SetCwdNoReload() ignores any P4CONFIG files found in the new directory hierarchy.

Example

The following code sets different working directories and displays them with p4 info.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb1;
StrBuf sb2;

sb1 = "C:\one";
sb2 = "C:\two";
client.SetCwdNoReload( &sb1 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );

client.SetCwdNoReload( &sb2 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetCwdNoReload( const char * )**

Sets the working directory to be used for this connection without checking `P4CONFIG`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>ClientApi</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const char *c</code>  the new directory path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetCwdNoReload()` does not permanently set a new working directory in the client environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object’s `Run()` method.

Unlike `SetCwd()`, `SetCwdNoReload()` ignores any `P4CONFIG` files found in the new directory hierarchy.

**Example**

The following code sets different working directories and displays them with `p4 info`.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

client.SetCwdNoReload( "C:\one" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );

client.SetCwdNoReload( "C:\two" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetHost( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the hostname to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th></th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td><strong>Arguments</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ClientApi</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const StrPtr *c</td>
<td>the new hostname value</td>
<td><strong>Returns</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetHost()` does not permanently change the host name of the client or set `P4HOST` in the environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object's `Run()` method.

**Example**

The following example sets different hostnames and displays them with `p4 info`.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb1;
StrBuf sb2;

sb1 = "magic";
sb2 = "shire";

client.SetHost( &sb1 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );

client.SetHost( &sb2 );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetHost( const char * )**

Sets the hostname to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetHost()` does not permanently change the host name of the client or set `P4HOST` in the environment. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object's `Run()` method.

**Example**

The following example sets different hostnames and displays them with `p4 info`.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

client.SetHost("magic");
client.Run("info", &ui);

client.SetHost("shire");
client.Run("info", &ui);
```
**ClientApi::SetIgnoreFile( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the full path name of the ignore file to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetIgnoreFile()` does not permanently set the `P4IGNORE` value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object’s `Run()` method.

**See also**

`ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile()` `ClientApi::GetIgnore()` `ClientApi::GetIgnoreFile()`

**Example**

The following example sets an ignore file location by calling `SetIgnoreFile()`.

```c
#include "clientapi.h"

int main()
{
    ClientApi client;
    StrBuf sb;

    sb = ".p4ignore";
    client.SetIgnoreFile( &sb );
}
```
**ClientApi::SetIgnoreFile( const char * )**

Sets the full path name of the ignore file to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| const char * c  
the full path name of the new ignore file |
| Returns  | void |

**Notes**

*SetIgnoreFile()* does not permanently set the `P4IGNORE` value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object’s `Run()` method.

**See also**

*ClientApi::DefineIgnoreFile()*, *clientapi.getignore*, `ClientApi::GetIgnore()`

*ClientApi::GetIgnoreFile()*

**Example**

The following example sets a ticket file location by calling `SetIgnoreFile()`.

```c++
#include "clientapi.h"

int main()
{
    ClientApi client;
    client.SetIgnoreFile( ".p4ignore" );
}
```
ClientApi::SetPassword( const StrPtr * )

Sets the password to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi</td>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const StrPtr *c</td>
<td>the new password value</td>
<td>Returns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

SetPassword() does not permanently change the P4PASSWD value in the environment, nor does it in any way change the password that has been set on the server. The new setting applies only to authentication attempts for commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s Run() method.

**Example**

The following trivial example demonstrates how to hard-code a password into an application without making it (immediately) user-visible.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb;

sb = "p455w04d";

client.SetPassword( &sb );
client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
client.Run( argv[1], &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetPassword( const char * )**

Sets the password to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Class</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ClientApi</td>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *c</td>
<td>the new password value</td>
<td>Returns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*SetPassword()* does not permanently change the *P4PASSWD* value in the environment, nor does it in any way change the password that has been set on the server. The new setting applies only to authentication attempts for commands executed by calling this *ClientApi* object’s *Run()* method.

**Example**

The following trivial example demonstrates how to hard-code a password into an application without making it (immediately) user-visible.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

client.SetPassword( "p455w04d" );
client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
client.Run( argv[1], &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetPort( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the port to be used to open this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetPort()` does not permanently change the `P4PORT` value in the environment. The new setting applies only to new connections established by calling this `ClientApi` object’s `Init()` method.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates setting a new port value before initializing the connection.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;
StrBuf sb;

sb = "ssl:magic:1666";

client.SetPort( &sb );
client.Init( &e );
```
**ClientApi::SetPort( const char * )**

Sets the port to be used to open this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>ClientApi</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const char *c</code> the new port value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*SetPort()* does not permanently change the *P4PORT* value in the environment. The new setting applies only to new connections established by calling this `ClientApi` object’s *Init()* method.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates setting a new port value before initializing the connection.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "magic:1666" );
client.Init( &e );
```
ClientApi::SetProg( const StrPtr * )

Sets the application or script name for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c the new program name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetProg() sets the identity of a client application as reported by the `p4 monitor` command, or as recorded by server logging.

Call SetProg() before calling Init().

See also

ClientApi::SetVersion()

Example

The following example appears as MyApp in the output of `p4 monitor show`.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb;
Error e;

sb.Set( "MyApp" );

client.Init( &e );
client.SetProg( &sb );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
ClientApi::SetProg( const char * )

Sets the application or script name for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new program name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetProg() sets the identity of a client application as reported by the p4 monitor command, or as recorded by server logging.

Call SetProg() before calling Init().

See also

ClientApi::SetVersion()

Example

The following example appears as MyApp in the output of p4 monitor show.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
client.SetProg( "MyApp" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
**ClientApi::SetProtocol( char *, char * )**

Sets special protocols for the server to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *p the name of the variable to set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *v the new value for that variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

SetProtocol() must be called before the connection is established with Init().

The following variables are supported by SetProtocol():

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>To enable tagged output (if tagged output for the command is supported by the server), set the tag variable to any value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specstring</td>
<td>To enable specially formatted application forms, set the specstring to any value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>api</td>
<td>Set the api variable to the value corresponding to the level of server behavior your application supports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enableStreams</td>
<td>To allow your application to work with stream depots, set the enableStreams variable to any value except 'no'. To explicitly disable streams support set enableStreams to 'no'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By default, the value of the api protocol variable matches the version of the API with which you built your application; under most circumstances, you do not need to set the protocol version from within your application. If you are concerned about changes in server behavior, you can manually set the api variable in order to protect your code against such changes.

For instance, the "p4 info" command supports tagged output as of server release 2003.2, and changes to this format were made in 2004.2. Code requesting tagged output from "p4 info" that was compiled against the 2003.1 API library may break (that is, start producing tagged output) when running against a 2003.2 or newer server. To prevent this from happening, set api to the value corresponding to the desired server release.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Set api to</th>
<th>Tagged output supported?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>info</td>
<td>unset</td>
<td>Only if both server and API are at 2004.2 or greater</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Set api to</th>
<th>Tagged output supported?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=55</td>
<td>Output is not tagged; behaves like 2003.1 or earlier, even if server supports tagged output.</td>
<td>=56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example

The following example demonstrates the use of `SetProtocol()` to enable tagged output. The result of this call is that the `ClientUser` object uses `OutputStat()` to handle the output, rather than `OutputInfo()`.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" );
client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "branches", &ui );
client.Final( &e );
```

The following code illustrates how to ensure forward compatibility when compiling against newer versions of the Perforce API or connecting to newer Perforce servers.
ClientApi client;
Error e;

printf( "Output is tagged depending on API or server level.\n" );
client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" ); // request tagged output
client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
client.Final( &e );

printf( "Force 2003.1 behavior regardless of API or server level.\n" );
client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" ); // request tagged output
client.SetProtocol( "api", "55" ); // but force 2003.1 mode (untagged)
client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
client.Final( &e );

printf( "Request 2003.2 output if API and server support it.\n" );
client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" ); // request tagged output
client.SetProtocol( "api", "56" ); // force 2003.2 mode (tagged)
client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
client.Final( &e );

The "p4 info" command supports tagged output only as of server release 2003.2. In the example, the first Run() leaves api unset; if both the client API and Perforce server support tagged output for p4 info (that is, if you link this code with the 2003.2 or later API and run it against a 2003.2 or later server), the output is tagged. If you link the same code with the libraries from the 2003.1 release of the API, however, the first Run() returns untagged output even if connected to a 2003.2 server. By setting api to 55, the second Run() ensures 2003.1 behavior regardless of API or server level. The third call to Run() supports 2003.2 behavior against a 2003.2 server and protects against future changes.
**ClientApi::SetProtocolV( char * )**

Sets special protocols for the server to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *nv the name and value of the variable to set in var=val form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

SetProtocolV() functions identically to SetProtocol(), except that its argument is a single string of the format variable=value.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the use of SetProtocolV() to enable tagged output. The result is that the ClientUser object uses OutputStat() to handle the output, rather than OutputInfo().

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetProtocolV( "tag=" );
client.Init( &e );
client.Run( "branches", &ui );
client.Final( &e );
```
### ClientApi::SetTicketFile( const StrPtr * )

Sets the full path name of the ticket file to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>ClientApi</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const StrPtr *c</code> the full path name of the new ticket file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`SetTicketFile()` does not permanently set the `P4TICKETS` value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this `ClientApi` object’s `Run()` method.

**Example**

The following example sets a ticket file location by calling `SetTicketFile()`.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
StrBuf sb;

sb = "/tmp/ticketfile.txt";
client.SetTicketFile( &sb );
```
ClientApi::SetTicketFile( const char * )

Sets the full path name of the ticket file to be used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the full path name of the new ticket file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetTicketFile() does not permanently set the P4TICKETS value in the environment or registry. The new setting applies only to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s Run() method.

Example

The following example sets a ticket file location by calling SetTicketFile().

```c
ClientApi client;
client.SetTicketFile( "/tmp/ticketfile.txt" );
```
**ClientApi::SetUi( ClientUser *)**

Reset the ClientUser object used for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ClientUser *ui   a pointer to a ClientUser object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Unless you pass the ClientUser object to the Run() method, you must first call SetUi(). The new setting applies to commands executed by calling this ClientApi object’s Run() method.

**Example**

The following example illustrates two ways to run p4 info:

```cpp
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;

client.Run( "info", &ui );
client.SetUi( &ui );
client.Run( "info" );
```


**ClientApi::SetUser( const StrPtr * )**

Sets the user for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c the new user name setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*SetUser()* does not permanently set the **P4USER** value in the environment or registry. Calling this method is equivalent to using the "-u" global option from the command line to set the user value for a single command, with the exception that a single ClientApi object can be used to invoke multiple commands in a row.

If the user setting is to be in effect for the command when it is executed, you must call *SetUser()* before calling *Run()*.

**Example**

The following example displays two user specifications by calling *SetUser()* between *Run()* commands.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;
StrBuf sb1;
StrBuf sb2;

sb1 = "user1";
sb2 = "user2";

char *args[1];
args[0] = "-o";

client.SetUser( &sb1 );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "user", &ui );

client.SetUser( &sb2 );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "user", &ui );
```
ClientApi::SetUser( const char * )

Sets the user for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c the new user name setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

SetUser() does not permanently set the P4USER value in the environment or registry. Calling this method is equivalent to using the "-u" global option from the command line to set the user value for a single command, with the exception that a single ClientApi object can be used to invoke multiple commands in a row.

If the user setting is to be in effect for the command when it is executed, you must call SetUser() before calling Run().

Example

The following example displays two user specifications by calling SetUser() between Run() commands.

ClientApi client;
Error e;

char *args[1];
args[0] = "-o";

client.SetUser( "user1" );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "user", &ui );

client.SetUser( "user2" );
client.SetArgv( 1, args );
client.Run( "user", &ui );
ClientApi::SetVersion( const StrPtr * )

Sets the application or script version for this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *c the new version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

SetVersion() sets the version number of a client application as reported by the `p4 monitor -e` command, or as recorded by server logging.

If a client application compiled with version 2005.2 or later of the API does not call SetVersion(), then the version string reported by p4 monitor -e (and recorded in the server log) defaults to the api value appropriate for the server level as per SetProtocol().

Call SetVersion() after calling Init() and before each call to Run().

**See also**

ClientApi::SetProtocol() ClientApi::SetProg()

**Example**

The following example appears as 2005.2 in the output of `p4 monitor show -e`.

```c
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
StrBuf sb;
Error e;

sb.Set( "2005.2" );

client.Init( &e );
client.SetVersion( &sb );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
ClientApi::SetVersion( const char * )

Sets the application or script version for this connection.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *c, the new version number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Notes**

SetVersion() sets the version number of a client application as reported by the `p4 monitor -e` command, or as recorded by server logging.

If a client application compiled with version 2005.2 or later of the API does not call `SetVersion()`, then the version string reported by `p4 monitor -e` (and recorded in the server log) defaults to the pass: `<literal>api</literal>` value appropriate for the server level as per `SetProtocol()`.

Call `SetVersion()` after calling `Init()` and before each call to `Run()`.

**See also**

ClientApi::SetProtocol() ClientApi::SetProg()

**Example**

The following example appears as 2005.2 in the output of `p4 monitor show -e`.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
ClientUser ui;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
client.SetVersion( "2005.2" );
client.Run( "info", &ui );
```
ClientProgress methods

ClientProgress::Description( const StrPtr *, int )

Sets up a description and defines the units by which command progress is measured.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientProgress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *desc description from the server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int units the units in which progress is to be measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The API calls this method on command startup, supplying your implementation with a description and a client progress unit type. The units in which client progress is measured are defined in clientprog.h as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client Progress Unit</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU_UNSPECIFIED</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No units specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU_PERCENT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Value is a percentage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU_FILES</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Value is a count of files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU_KBYTES</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Value is in kilobytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU_MBYTES</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Value is in megabytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

ClientUser::CreateProgress() ClientUser::ProgressIndicator() ClientProgress::Done() ClientProgress::Total() ClientProgress::Update()

Example

Create a subclass of ClientProgress and define an implementation of Description(), even if it is a trivial implementation:

```c
void MyProgress::Description( const StrPtr *desc, int units )
{
    printf( "Starting command:\n" );
}
```
**ClientProgress::Done( int )**

Called when an operation completes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientProgress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The API calls `Done()` on command completion with 0 for success, or 1 for failure.

**See also**

ClientUser::CreateProgress() ClientUser::ProgressIndicator() ClientProgress::Description() ClientProgress::Total() ClientProgress::Update()

**Example**

To change the way completed actions are reported, create a subclass of ClientProgress and define an alternate implementation of `Done()`. For example, to output "Command failed" or "Command completed" upon success or failure, implement `Done()` as follows:

```c
void MyProgress::Done( int fail )
{
    printf( fail ? "Command failed\n" : "Command completed\n");
}
```
**ClientProgress::Total( long )**

Defines the number of units requested during the operation, if known.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientProgress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>long units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The API calls this method if and when it has determined the number of client progress units, as defined by `Description()`, are to be processed during the command.

If the total number of expected units changes during the lifetime of a command, the API may call this method more than once. (The total number of expected units is *not* the same as the number of remaining units; certain commands may result in multiple calls to this method as the server determines more about the amount of data to be retrieved.)

**See also**

ClientUser::CreateProgress() ClientUser::ProgressIndicator() ClientProgress::Description() ClientProgress::Done() ClientProgress::Update()

**Example**

To report how many progress units are expected, create a subclass of `ClientProgress` and define an alternate implementation of `Total()`.

For example, the following method outputs the number of units expected and is called when, if, and as the total number of expected units changes over the lifetime of the command:

```c++
void MyProgress::Total( long units )
{
    printf( "Now expecting %ld units\n" );
}
```
**ClientProgress::Update(long)**

Reports on command progress and user cancellation requests.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientProgress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>long units    Total number of progress units processed, if known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The API calls the `Update()` method periodically during the life of a command and reports on the number of client progress units processed. (Because a million calls for an update of one million 1024-byte files would be prohibitive, not every unit of progress is reported.) Instead, the API calls this method periodically depending on a combination of elapsed time and number of client progress units processed.

In addition to reporting progress in terms of the units defined by `Description()`, if `Update()` returns non-zero, the API interprets it as a user request to cancel the operation.

**See also**

`ClientUser::CreateProgress()` `ClientUser::ProgressIndicator()` `ClientProgress::Description()` `ClientProgress::Done()` `ClientProgress::Total()`

**Example**

To report on units processed, create a subclass of `ClientProgress` and define an alternate implementation of `Update()`. A trivial implementation ignores cancel requests by always returning 0; a more useful implementation might resemble the following:

```cpp
void MyProgress::Update( long units )
{
    if ( cancelclicked() ) // has anyone clicked the Cancel button?
    {
        return 1; // yes, user wishes to cancel
    }
    else
    {
        displayGUI( units ); // show how many units have been processed
        return 0; // user has not requested cancel, continue processing
    }
}
```
ClientUser methods

ClientUser::CreateProgress( int )

Create a ClientProgress object by subclassing, or null if no progress indicator is desired.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int ProgressType the type of progress to be reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>*ClientProgress a pointer to the new ClientProgress object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To enable progress reporting for a command, create a ClientProgress object and then implement ProgressIndicator() to return 0 or 1 depending on whether or not you want to enable the progress indicator. (You typically implement ProgressIndicator() to return 1, and call it only when a progress indicator is desired.)

The API calls this method with the appropriate ProgressType as defined in clientprog.h. The following ProgressTypes can be reported:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client Progress Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPT_SENDFILE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Files sent to server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPT_RECVFILE</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Files received from server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPT_FILESTRANS</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Files transmitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPT_COMPUTATION</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Computation performed server-side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

ClientUser::ProgressIndicator() ClientProgress::Description() ClientProgress::Done() ClientProgress::Total() ClientProgress::Update()
Chapter 3. Public Methods Reference

ClientUser::Diff( FileSys *, FileSys *, int, char *, Error * )

Diff two files, and display the results.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSys *f1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *f2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int doPage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *diffFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Returns | void |

Notes

This method is used by p4 diff and to display diffs from an interactive p4 resolve. If no external diff program is specified, the diff is carried out with a Diff object (part of the Perforce C/C++ API); otherwise, Diff() simply calls the specified external program.

As with Merge(), the external program is invoked with ClientUser::RunCmd().

If doPage is nonzero and the P4PAGER environment variable is set, the output is piped through the executable specified by P4PAGER.

See also

ClientUser::RunCmd()

Example

In its default implementation, this method is called by an application when p4 diff is run. For example:

p4 diff -dc file.c

results in a call to Diff() with the arguments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f1</td>
<td>a temp file containing the head revision of depot file file.c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f2</td>
<td>the local workspace version of file file.c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The diff is performed by creating a Diff object, giving it \texttt{f1} and \texttt{f2} as its inputs, and -c as its flag. The end result is sent to \texttt{stdout}. If either of the files is binary, the message “files differ” is printed instead.

Selecting the “d” option during an interactive \texttt{p4 resolve} also calls the \texttt{Diff()} method, with the \texttt{doPage} argument set to 1.

If the environment variable \texttt{P4PAGER} or \texttt{PAGER} is set, then setting \texttt{doPage} to 1 causes the diff output to be fed through the specified pager. If \texttt{P4PAGER} and \texttt{PAGER} are unset, \texttt{dopage} has no effect and the resolve routine displays the diff output normally.

To enable an application to override the default diff routine, create a subclass of \texttt{ClientUser} that overrides the \texttt{Diff()} method, and use this subclass in place of \texttt{ClientUser}.

As an example, suppose that you have a special diff program designed for handling binary files, and you want \texttt{p4 diff} to use it whenever asked to diff binary files (rather than display the default “files differ…”).

Furthermore, you want to keep your current \texttt{P4DIFF} setting for the purpose of diffing text files, so you decide to use a new environment variable called \texttt{P4DIFFBIN} to reference the binary diff program. If \texttt{P4DIFFBIN} is set and one of the files is non-text, the \texttt{P4DIFFBIN} program is invoked as \texttt{P4DIFF} is in the default implementation. Otherwise, the default implementation is called.

Most of the following code is copied and pasted from the default implementation.

```cpp
MyClientUser::Diff( FileSys *f1, FileSys *f2, int doPage, char *df, Error *e )
{
    const char *diff = enviro->Get( "P4DIFFBIN" );
    if ( diff && ( !f1->IsTextual() || !f2->IsTextual() ) ) // binary diff
    {
        if ( !df || !*df )
        {
            RunCmd( diff, 0, f1->Name(), f2->Name(), 0, pager, e );
        }
        else
        {
            StrBuf flags;
            flags.Set( "-", 1 );
            flags << df;
            RunCmd( diff, flags. Text(), f1->Name(), f2->Name(), 0, pager, e );
        }
    }
    else ClientUser::Diff( f1, f2, doPage, df, e );
}
```

### Table of Arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doPage</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diffFlag</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>a normal \texttt{Error} object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ClientUser::Diff( FileSys *, FileSys *, FileSys *, int, char *, Error * )

Diff two files, and output the results to a third file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSys *f1 the first file to be diffed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *f2 the second file to be diffed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *fout the target file for diff output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int doPage should output be paged?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *diffFlags flags to diff routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method works like Diff(), but instead of sending data to the standard output, writes the data to the specified output file.
ClientUser::Edit( FileSys *, Error * )

Bring up the given file in a text editor. Called by all `p4` commands that edit specifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSys *f1 the file to be edited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The `FileSys *` argument to `Edit()` refers to a client temp file that contains the specification that is to be given to the server. `Edit()` does not send the file to the server; its only job is to modify the file. In the default implementation, `Edit()` does not return until the editor has returned.

There is also a three-argument version of `Edit()`, for which the default two-argument version is simply a wrapper. The three-argument version takes an `Enviro` object as an additional argument, and the two-argument version simply passes the member variable `enviro` as this argument. Only the two-argument version is virtual.

**Example**

The `p4 client` command is one of several Perforce commands that use `ClientUser::Edit()` to allow the user to modify a specification. When the command is executed, the server sends the client specification to the client machine, where it is held in a temp file. `Edit()` is then called with that file as an argument, and an editor is spawned. When the editor closes, `Edit()` returns, and the temp file is sent to the server.

To allow modification of a specification by other means, such as a customized dialog or an automated process, create a subclass of `ClientUser` that overrides the `Edit()` method and use this subclass in place of `ClientUser`.

Suppose that you have already written a function that takes a `FileSys` as input, opens a custom dialog, and returns when the file has been modified. Replace the body of `Edit()` in your subclass with a call to your function, as follows:

```c
void MyClientUser::Edit( FileSys *f1, Error *e )
{
    MyDialog( f1 );
}
```
**ClientUser::ErrorPause( char *, Error * )**

Outputs an error and prompts for a keystroke to continue.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *errBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of `ErrorPause()` consists solely of calls to `OutputError()` and `Prompt()`.

**Example**

One situation that results in a call to `ErrorPause()` is an incorrectly edited specification; for example:

```plaintext
> p4 client
...  
Error in client specification. 
Error detected at line 31. 
Wrong number of words for field 'Root'. 
Hit return to continue...
```

In this instance, the first three lines of output were the `errBuf` argument to `ErrorPause()`; they were displayed using `OutputError()`.

To display an error and prompt for confirmation within a GUI application, create a subclass of `ClientUser` that overrides `ErrorPause()` and use this subclass in place of `ClientUser`.

Suppose that you have a function `MyWarning()` that takes a `char *` as an argument, and displays the argument text in an appropriate popup dialog that has to be clicked to be dismissed. You can implement `ErrorPause()` as a call to this function, as follows:

```c
void MyClientUser::ErrorPause( char *errBuf, Error *e )
{
    MyWarning( errBuf );
}
```

Within a GUI, the warning text and “OK” button are probably bundled into a single dialog, so overriding `ErrorPause()` is a better approach than overriding `OutputError()` and `Prompt()` separately.
**ClientUser::File( FileSysType )**

Create a FileSys object for reading and writing files in the client workspace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSysType, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>FileSys *, type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method is a wrapper for FileSys::Create().

**Example**

ClientUser::File() is generally called whenever it’s necessary to manipulate files in the client workspace. For example, a p4 sync, p4 edit, or p4 revert makes one call to File() for each workspace file with which the command interacts.

An alternate implementation might return a subclass of FileSys. For example, if you have defined a class MyFileSys and want your MyClientUser class to use members of this class rather than the base FileSys, reimplement File() to return a MyFileSys instead:

```c++
FileSys * MyClientUser::File( FileSysType type )
{
    return MyFileSys::Create( type );
}
```
**ClientUser::Finished()**

Called after client commands finish.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function is called by the server at the end of every Perforce command, but in its default implementation, it has no effect. The default implementation of this function is empty - it takes nothing, does nothing, and returns nothing.

**Example**

To trigger an event after the completion of a command, create a subclass of ClientUser and provide a new implementation of `Finished()` that calls that event.

For example, if you want your application to beep after each command, put the command into `Finished()`, as follows.

```c
void MyClientUser::Finished()
{
    printf( "Finished!\n%c", 7 );
}
```
**ClientUser::HandleError( Error * )**

Process error data after a failed command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>ClientUser</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation formats the error with `Error::Fmt()` and outputs the result with `OutputError()`.

2002.1 and newer servers do not call `HandleError()` to display errors. Instead, they call `Message()`. The default implementation of `Message()` calls `HandleError()` if its argument is a genuine error; as a result, older code that uses `HandleError()` can be used with the newer API and newer servers so long as the default implementation of `Message()` is retained.

**Example**

`HandleError()` is called whenever a command encounters an error. For example:

```
> p4 files nonexistent
nonexistent - no such file(s).
```

In this case, the `Error` object given to `HandleError()` contains the text "nonexistent - no such file(s)." and has a severity of 2 (E_WARN).

To handle errors in a different way, create a subclass of `ClientUser` with an alternate implementation of `HandleError()`.

For example, if you want an audible warning on a fatal error, implement `HandleError()` as follows:

```c
void MyClientUser::HandleError( Error *err )
{   if ( err->IsFatal() ) printf ( "Fatal error!
%c", 7 );
}
```
**ClientUser::Help( const char *const * )**

Displays a block of help text to the user. Used by `p4 resolve` but not `p4 help`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *const *help an array of arrays containing the help text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function is called by `p4 resolve` when the “?” option is selected during an interactive resolve. The default implementation displays the help text given to it, one line at a time.

**Example**

The default implementation is called in order to display the "merge options" block of help text during a resolve by dumping the text to `stdout`.

To display the resolve help text in another manner, create a subclass of `ClientUser` with an alternate implementation of `Help()`.

For example, suppose you’d like a helpful message about the meaning of "yours" and "theirs" to be attached to the help message. Define the method as follows:

```cpp
void MyClientUser::Help( const char *const *help )
{
    for ( ; *help; help++ )
        printf( "\n", *help );
    printf( "Note: In integrations, yours is the target file, \n    theirs is the source file.\n" );
}
```
ClientUser::InputData( StrBuf *, Error * )

Provide data from stdin to p4 < command> -i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| StrBuf *strbuf  
          | the StrBuf which is to hold the data |
|          | Error *e     
          | an Error object |
| Returns  | void         |

Notes

Any command that edits a specification can take the -i option; this method supplies the data for the specification. In the default implementation, the data comes from stdin, but an alternate implementation can accept the data from any source. This method is the only way to send a specification to the server without first putting it into a local file.

Example

The default implementation is called during a normal invocation of p4 client -i.

p4 client -i < clispec.txt

In this example, clispec.txt is fed to the command as stdin. Its contents are appended to the StrBuf that is given as an argument to InputData(), and this StrBuf is given to the server after InputData() returns.

To read the data from a different source, create a subclass of ClientUser with an alternate implementation of InputData().

For example, suppose that you want to be able to edit a client specification without creating a local temp file. You’ve already written a function which generates the new client specification and stores it as a StrBuf variable in your ClientUser subclass. To send your modified client specification to the server when running p4 client -i with your modified ClientUser, implement InputData() to read data from that StrBuf.

The example below assumes that the subclass MyClientUser has a variable called mySpec that already contains the valid client specification before running p4 client -i.

```c
void MyClientUser::InputData( StrBuf *buf, Error *e )
{
    buf->Set( mySpec );
}
```
**ClientUser::Merge( FileSys *, FileSys *, FileSys *, FileSys *, Error * )**

Call an external merge program to merge three files during resolve.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSys *base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *leg1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *leg2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FileSys *result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*Merge()* is called if the "m" option is selected during an interactive resolve. *Merge()* does not call the Perforce merge program; it merely invokes external merge programs (including P4Merge as well as third-party tools). External merge programs must be specified by an environment variable, either *P4MERGE* or *MERGE*. *Merge()* returns after the external merge program exits.

As in *Diff()* the external program is invoked using *ClientUser::RunCmd()*.

**See also**

*ClientUser::RunCmd()*

**Example**

When the "merge" option is selected during an interactive resolve, the file arguments to *Merge()* are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>base</td>
<td>A temp file built from the depot revision that is the &quot;base&quot; of the resolve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg1</td>
<td>A temp file built from the depot revision that is the &quot;theirs&quot; of the resolve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg2</td>
<td>The local workspace file that is the &quot;yours&quot; of the resolve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result</td>
<td>A temp file in which to construct the new revision of &quot;yours&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These file arguments correspond exactly to the command-line arguments passed to the merge tool.
After you "accept" the merged file (with "ae"), the "result" temp file is copied into the "leg2" or "yours" workspace file, and this is the file that is submitted to the depot.

To change the way that external merge programs are called during a resolve, create a subclass of ClientUser with an alternate implementation of Merge().

For example, suppose that one of your favorite merge tools, "yourmerge", requires the "result" file as the first argument. Rather than wrapping the call to the merge tool in a script and requiring your users to set P4MERGE to point to the script, you might want to provide support for this tool from within your application as follows:

```c++
void MyClientUser::Merge(
    FileSys *base,
    FileSys *leg1,
    FileSys *leg2,
    FileSys *result,
    Error *e )
{
    char *merger;

    if ( !( merger = enviro->Get( "P4MERGE" ) ) &&
            !( merger = getenv( "MERGE" ) ) )
    {
        e->Set( ErrClient::NoMerger );
        return;
    }

    if ( strcmp( merger, "yourmerge" ) == 0 )
    {
        RunCmd( merger, result->Name(), base->Name(),
                leg1->Name(), leg2->Name(), 0, e );
    }
    else
    {
        RunCmd( merger, base->Name(), leg1->Name(),
                leg2->Name(), result->Name(), 0, e );
    }
}
```
**ClientUser::Message( Error * )**

Output information or errors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *e an Error object containing the message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`Message()` is used by 2002.1 and later servers to display information or errors resulting from Perforce commands. Earlier versions of the Perforce server call `OutputInfo()` to display information, and `HandleError()` to display errors.

The default implementation of `Message()` makes calls to `OutputInfo()` or `HandleError()` as appropriate. If you want your application to be compatible with pre-2002.1 servers, use this default implementation of `Message()` - newer servers will call `Message()`, and older servers will call `OutputInfo()` and `HandleError()` directly.

If you re-implement `Message()` to handle errors and information in a different way, be advised that older servers will still call `OutputInfo()` and `HandleError()` rather than your `Message()` method.

**Example**

```
> p4 files //depot/proj/...
//depot/proj/file.c#1 - add change 456 (text)
```

In this example, the server passes a single `Error` object to the `ClientUser`'s `Message()` method, with a severity of `E_INFO` and text "//depot/proj/file.c#1 - add change 456 (text)". The default `Message()` method detects that this was an "info" message, and passes the text to `OutputInfo()`, which by default sends the text to `stdout`.

To handle messages differently, subclass `ClientUser` and re-implement the `Message()` method (see the preceding note on interoperability with old servers if you do this).

For example, to take all server messages and load them into a `StrBuf` that is a member of your `ClientUser` class, use the following:

```c
void MyClientUser::Message( Error *err )
{
    StrBuf buf;
    err->Fmt( buf, EF_PLAIN );
    myBuf.Append( buf );
}
```
**ClientUser::OutputBinary( const char *, int )**

Output binary data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *data, int length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of `OutputBinary()` writes the contents of a binary file to `stdout`. A call to `OutputBinary()` is typically the result of running `p4 print` on a binary file:

```
p4 print //depot/file.jpg > newfile.jpg
```

**Example**

To modify the way in which binary files are output with `p4 print`, create a subclass of `ClientUser` with an alternate implementation of `OutputBinary()`.

For example, suppose that you want PDF files to be printed to `stdout` as plain text. Add the following code (that checks to see if the file is PDF and, if so, calls a hypothetical `OutputPDF()` function to output PDFs to `stdout`) to the beginning of your implementation of `OutputBinary()`.

```c
void MyClientUser::OutputBinary( const char *data, int length )
{
    static unsigned char pdfFlag[] = { '%', 'P', 'D', 'F', '-' };
    if ( length >= 5 && memcmp( data, pdfFlag, sizeof( pdfFlag ) ) )
        OutputPDF( data, length );
    else
        ClientUser::OutputBinary( data, length );
}
```
ClientUser::OutputError( const char * )

Display a message as an error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *errBuf the error message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The default implementation sends its argument to stderr. OutputError() is called by functions like HandleError().

Example

Because the default implementation of HandleError() calls it, OutputError() is responsible for printing every error message in Perforce. For example:

```
p4 files //nonexistent/...
nonexistent - no such file(s).
```

In this case, the argument to OutputError() is the array containing the error message "nonexistent - no such file(s)."

To change the way error messages are displayed, create a subclass of ClientUser and define an alternate implementation of OutputError().

For example, to print all error messages to stdout rather than stderr, and precede them with the phrase "!!ERROR!!", implement OutputError() as follows:

```
void MyClientUser::OutputError( const char *errBuf )
{
    printf( "!!ERROR!! " );
    fwrite( errBuf, 1, strlen( errBuf ), stdout );
}
```
**ClientUser::OutputInfo( char, const char * )**

Output tabular data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char level: the indentation &quot;level&quot; of the output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *data: one line of output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`OutputInfo()` is called by the server during most Perforce commands; its most common use is to display listings of information about files. Any output not printed with `OutputInfo()` is typically printed with `OutputText()`. Running `p4 -s <command>` indicates whether any given line of output is "info" or "text".

In the default implementation of `OutputInfo()`, one “…” string is printed per "level". Values given as "levels" are either 0, 1, or 2. The "data" passed is generally one line, without a line break; `OutputInfo()` adds the newline when it prints the output.

To capture information directly from Perforce commands for parsing or storing rather than output to `stdout`, it is usually necessary to use an alternate implementation of `OutputInfo()`.

2002.1 and newer servers do not call `OutputInfo()` to display information. Instead, they call `Message()`. The default implementation of `Message()` calls `OutputInfo()` if its argument represents information instead of an error; older code that uses `OutputInfo()` can be used with the newer API and newer servers, so long as the default implementation of `Message()` is retained.

**Example**

The `p4 filelog` command produces tabular output:

```
> p4 filelog final.c
//depot/final.c
... #3 change 703 edit on 2001/08/24 by testuser@shire (text) 'fixed'
... ... copy into //depot/new.c#4
... #2 change 698 edit on 2001/08/24 by testuser@shire (text) 'buggy'
... ... branch into //depot/middle.c#1
... #1 change 697 branch on 2001/08/24 by testuser@shire (text) 'test'
... ... branch from //depot/old.c#1,#3
```

Each line of output corresponds to one call to `OutputInfo()`. The first line of output has a level of '0', the line for each revision has a level of '1', and the integration record lines have levels of '2'. (The actual "data" text for these lines does not include the "…” strings.)
To alter the way in which "info" output from the server is handled, create a subclass of \texttt{ClientUser} and provide an alternate implementation of \texttt{OutputInfo()}.  

For example, to capture output in a set of \texttt{StrBuf} variables rather than display it to \texttt{stdout}, your \texttt{ClientUser} subclass must contain three \texttt{StrBufs}, one for each level of info output, as follows:

```c++
void MyClientUser::OutputInfo( char level, const char *data )
{
    switch( level )
    {
    default:
        case '0':
            myInfo0.Append( data );
            myInfo0.Append( "\n" );
            break;
        case '1':
            myInfo1.Append( data );
            myInfo1.Append( "\n" );
            break;
        case '2':
            myInfo2.Append( data );
            myInfo2.Append( "\n" );
            break;
    }
}
```
ClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict * )

Process tagged output.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrDict *varList a StrDict containing the information returned by the command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Normally, the only Perforce command that sends output through OutputStat() is p4 fstat, which always returns tagged output. Some other commands can be made to return tagged output by setting the “tag” protocol variable, in which case the output is in the form of a StrDict suitable for passing to OutputStat() for processing.

It is generally easier to deal with tagged output than it is to parse standard output. The default implementation of OutputStat() passes each variable/value pair in the StrDict to OutputInfo() as a line of text with a level of "1", with the exception of the "func" var, which it skips. Alternate implementations can use tagged output to extract the pieces of information desired from a given command.

Example

Consider the following output from p4 fstat:

```
> p4 fstat file.c
... depotfile //depot/file.c
... clientFile c:\depot\file.c
... isMapped
... headAction integrate
... headType text
... headTime 998644337
... headRev 10
... headChange 681
... headModTime 998643970
... haveRev 10
```

The StrDict passed to OutputStat() consists of eight variable/value pairs, one for each line of output, plus a “func” entry, which is discarded by the default implementation of OutputStat(). Other commands can be made to return tagged output through OutputStat() by using the -Ztag global option at the command line.

To process tagged output differently, create a subclass of ClientUser with an alternate implementation of OutputStat(). The following simple example demonstrates how the “headRev” and “haveRev” variables resulting from an “fstat” command can be easily extracted and manipulated.
Other commands provide \texttt{StrDict}s with different variable/value pairs that can be processed in similar ways; use \texttt{p4 -Ztag command} to get an understanding for what sort of information to expect.

```c++
void MyClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict *varList )
{
    StrPtr *headrev;
    StrPtr *haverev;

    headrev = varList->GetVar( "headRev" );
    haverev = varList->GetVar( "haveRev" );

    printf( "By default, revision numbers are returned as strings:\n" );
    printf( "  Head revision number: %s\n", headrev->Text() );
    printf( "  Have revision number: %s\n", haverev->Text() );

    printf( "but revision numbers can be converted to integers:\n" );
    printf( "  Head revision number: %d\n", headrev->Atoi() );
    printf( "  Have revision number: %d\n", haverev->Atoi() );
}
```
ClientUser::OutputText( const char *, int )

Output textual data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *errBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The most common usage of OutputText() is in running p4 print on a text file.

Example

```
> p4 print -q file.txt
This is a text file.
It is called "file.txt"
```

The arguments to OutputText() in the preceding example are the pointer to the first character in the file contents, and the length of the file in bytes.

To alter the way in which OutputText() handles text data, create a subclass of ClientUser and provide an alternate implementation of OutputText().

For example, suppose that your ClientUser subclass contains a StrBuf called myData, and you want to store the data in this StrBuf rather than dump it to stdout.

```
void MyClientUser::OutputText( const char *data, int length )
{
    myData.Set( data, length );
}
```
**ClientUser::ProgressIndicator()**

Returns nonzero if progress is to be reported, otherwise returns 0.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

After you have created a ClientProgress object with CreateProgress(), you must also implement ProgressIndicator() to return 0 or 1 depending on whether or not you want to report progress.

**See also**

ClientUser::CreateProgress() ClientProgress::Description() ClientProgress::Done() ClientProgress::Total() ClientProgress::Update()

**Example**

The typical implementation of ProgressIndicator() returns 1, and you call it when you wish to enable progress reporting:

```cpp
MyUserProgress::ProgressIndicator()
{
    return 1;
}
```
ClientUser::Prompt( const StrPtr & msg, StrBuf & rsp, int noEcho, Error * e )

Prompt the user and get a response.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ClientUser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; msg the message with which to prompt the user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrBuf &amp; rsp where to put the user’s response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int noEcho specifies whether echo should be turned off at the console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>Error * e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Prompt() is used in the default implementation of HandleError() to prompt the user to correct the error. Prompt() is also used by the interactive resolve routine to prompt for options.

Example

Consider the following user interaction with p4 resolve:

```plaintext
> p4 resolve file.c
C:\depot\file.c - merging //depot/file.c#2,#10
Diff chunks: 0 yours + 1 theirs + 0 both + 0 conflicting
Accept(a) Edit(e) Diff(d) Merge (m) Skip(s) Help(?) [at]: at
```

In the above example, the "msg" argument to Prompt() is the “Accept...[at"];” string. The response, "at", is placed into the "rsp" StrBuf, which is sent to the server and processed as "accept theirs".

To alter the behavior of Prompt(), create a subclass of ClientUser and provide an alternate implementation of Prompt().

For example, suppose that you are writing a GUI application and want each option in the interactive resolve to appear in a dialog box. A function called MyDialog() to create a dialog box containing the text of its argument and a text field, and return a character array with the user’s response, would look like this:

```c
void MyClientUser::Prompt( const StrPtr & msg, StrBuf & buf, 
                          int noEcho, Error * e )
{
    buf.Set( MyDialog( msg.Text() ) );
}
```
**ClientUser::RunCmd( const char *, const char *, [...], Error * )**

Call an external program.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>ClientUser</strong> (static)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *command</td>
<td>the executable to be called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *arg1</td>
<td>the first argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *arg2</td>
<td>the second argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *arg3</td>
<td>the third argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *arg4</td>
<td>the fourth argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *pager</td>
<td>a pager, if any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error *e</td>
<td>an <strong>Error</strong> object to hold system errors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*RunCmd()* is called when the client needs to call an external program, such as a merge or diff utility. *RunCmd()* stores any resulting errors in the specified **Error** object.

**Example**

If you select "d" for "Diff" during an interactive resolve, and both **P4DIFF** and **P4PAGER** are set in your environment, *RunCmd()* is called with the following arguments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td><strong>P4DIFF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arg1</td>
<td>local file name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arg2</td>
<td>temp file name (depot file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arg3</td>
<td>null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arg4</td>
<td>null</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pager</td>
<td><strong>P4PAGER</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **P4DIFF** program is called with the two file names as arguments, and the output is piped through the **P4PAGER** program.
See the examples for `Diff()` and `Merge()` for code illustrating the use of `RunCmd()`.
### Error methods

#### Error::Clear()

Remove any error messages from an Error object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

Clear() can be used if you need to clear an Error after having handled it in a way that does not automatically clear it.

### Example

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a nonexistent server, displays the error’s severity, clears the error, and shows that the error has been cleared:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "bogus:12345" );
client.Init( &e );

printf( "Error severity after Init() is %d\n", e.GetSeverity() );
e.Clear();
printf( "Error severity after Clear() is %d\n", e.GetSeverity() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
Error severity after Init() is 4.
Error severity after Clear() is 0.
```
**Error::Dump( const char * )**

Display an **Error** struct for debugging.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>Error</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char * trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

**Dump()** can be used to determine the exact nature of an **Error** that is being handled. Its primary use is in debugging, as the nature of the output is more geared towards informing the developer than helping an end user.

**Example**

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a nonexistent server, and dumps the resulting error:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;
client.SetPort( "bogus:12345" );
client.Init( &e );
e.Dump( "example" );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
Error example 0012FF5C
  Severity 4 (error)
  Generic 38
  Count 3
  0: 1093012493 (sub 13 sys 3 gen 38 args 1 sev 4 code 3085)
  0: %host%: host unknown.
  1: 1093012492 (sub 12 sys 3 gen 38 args 1 sev 4 code 3084)
  1: TCP connect to %host% failed.
  2: 1076240385 (sub 1 sys 8 gen 38 args 0 sev 4 code 8193)
  2: Connect to server failed; check $P4PORT.
  host = bogus
  host = bogus:12345
```
Error::Fmt( StrBuf * )

Format the text of an error into a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf *buf a pointer to the StrBuf to contain the formatted error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The result of Fmt() is suitable for displaying to an end user; this formatted text is what the command line client displays when an error occurs.

If an error has no severity (E_EMPTY), Fmt() returns with no change to the StrBuf.

If the error has severity of info (E_INFO), the StrBuf is formatted.

If the error has any higher severity, the StrBuf argument passed to Fmt() is cleared and then replaced with the formatted error.

Example

The following example code displays an error's text:

```c
if ( e.Test() )
{
    StrBuf msg;
    e.Fmt( &msg );
    printf( "ERROR:\n%s", msg.Text() );
}
```
Error::Fmt( StrBuf *, int )

Format the text of an error into a StrBuf, after applying formatting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int opts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The result of Fmt() is suitable for displaying to an end user; this formatted text is what the command line client displays when an error occurs.

If an error has no severity (E_EMPTY), Fmt() returns with no change to the StrBuf.

If the error has severity of info (E_INFO), the StrBuf is formatted.

If the error has any higher severity, the StrBuf argument passed to Fmt() is cleared and then replaced with the formatted error.

The opts argument is a flag or combination of flags defined by the ErrorFmtOpts enum. The default is EF_NEWLINE, which puts a newline at the end of the buffer.

Formatting options are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EF_PLAIN</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>perform no additional formatting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF_INDENT</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>indent each line with a tab (\t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF_NEWLINE</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>default - terminate buffer with a newline (\n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF_NOXLATE</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>ignore P4LANGUAGE setting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

The following example code displays an error’s text, indented with a tab.
if ( e.Test() )
{
    StrBuf msg;
    e.Fmt( &msg, EF_INDENT );
    printf( "ERROR:\n%s", msg.Text() );
}
### Error::GetGeneric()

Returns generic error code of the most severe error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes

For more sophisticated handling, use a "switch" statement based on the error number to handle different errors in different ways.

The generic error codes are not documented at this time.

#### Example

The following example attempts to establish a connection to a nonexistent server, and displays the resulting generic error code.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "bogus:12345" );
client.Init( &e );

if ( e.Test() ) printf( "Init() failed, error code %d.\n", e.GetGeneric() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
Init() failed, error code 38.
```
**Error::GetSeverity()**

Returns severity of the most severe error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int the severity of the most severe error</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The severity can take the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E_EMPTY (0)</td>
<td>no error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_INFO (1)</td>
<td>information, not necessarily an error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_WARN (2)</td>
<td>a minor error occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_FAILED (3)</td>
<td>the command was used incorrectly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E_FATAL (4)</td>
<td>fatal error, the command can't be processed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a server, and beeps if the severity is a warning or worse:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;
client.SetPort( "magic:1666" );
client.Init( &e );
if ( e.GetSeverity() > E_INFO ) printf( "Uh-oh!%c\n", 13 );
```
**Error::IsFatal()**

Tests whether there has been a fatal error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>Error</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int nonzero if error is fatal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function returns nonzero if `GetSeverity() == E_FATAL`.

**Example**

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a server, and beeps if the severity is fatal:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "magic:1666" );
client.Init( &e );

if ( e.IsFatal() ) printf( "Fatal error!\n", 13 );
```
**Error::IsWarning()**

Tests whether the error is a warning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>Error</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int nonzero if the most severe error is a warning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function returns nonzero if `GetSeverity() == E_WARN`.

**Example**

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a server, and beeps if the severity is a warning:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "magic:1666" );
client.Init( &e );

if ( e.IsWarning() ) printf( "Warning!\n", 13 );
```
Error::Net( const char *, const char * )

Add a network-related error to an Error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *op the network operation that was attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *arg relevant information about that operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To use an Error object to track network-related errors, use Net(). Note that network communication with the Perforce server and related errors are already handled by lower levels of the client API.

Example

The following example adds an error message, related to a failure to bind to a network interface, to an Error object.

```c
    e.Net( "bind", service.Text() );
```
Error::operator << ( int )

Add data to the text of an error message.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int arg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>Error &amp;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The “<<” operator can be used to add text to an error as if the error is an output stream. This operator is typically used in the implementation of other Error methods.

Note that an Error consists of more than its text, it’s more useful to use Set() to establish a base Error and then add text into that, rather than merely adding text to an empty Error object.

**Example**

The following example creates an Error using Set() and the << operator.

```c
e.Set( E_WARN, "Warning, number " ) << myErrNum;
```
**Error::operator << ( char * )**

Add data to the text of an error message.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class</strong></td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arguments</strong></td>
<td>char *arg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Returns</strong></td>
<td>Error &amp;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The "<<" operator can be used to add text to an error as if the error is an output stream. This operator is typically used in the implementation of other Error methods.

Note that an Error consists of more than its text, it’s more useful to use set() to establish a base Error and then add text into that, rather than merely adding text to an empty Error object.

**Example**

The following example creates an Error using Set() and the << operator.

```c++
    e.Set( E_WARN, "Warning! " ) << "Something bad happened";
```
**Error::operator << ( const StrPtr & )**

Add data to the text of an error message.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;arg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>Error &amp;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See [Error::operator << (int)] for details.
**Error::operator = ( Error & )**

Copy an error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error &amp; source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The “=” operator copies one Error into another.

**Example**

The following example sets Error e1 to equal e2.

```cpp
Error e1, e2;
e1 = e2;
```
Error::Set( enum ErrorSeverity, const char * )

Add an error message to an Error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>enum ErrorSeverity s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *fmt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

An Error can hold multiple error messages; Set() adds the error message to the Error, rather than replacing the Error’s previous contents.

An ErrorSeverity is an int from 0-4 as described in the documentation on GetSeverity().

Example

The following example adds a fatal error to an Error object.

```c
Error e;
e.Set( E_FATAL, "Fatal error!" );
```
**Error::Set( ErrorId & )**

Add an error message to an Error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ErrorId&amp; id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See [Error::Set( enum ErrSeverity, const char * )](#) for details.

An ErrorId is a struct containing an int(s) and a const char *(fmt).*
Error::Sys( const char *, const char * )

Add a system error to an Error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *op the system call that was attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *arg relevant information about that call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

To use an Error object to track errors generated by system calls such as file operations, use Sys().

Example

The following example adds an error message, related to a failure to rename a file, to an Error object.

```c
    e.Sys( "rename", targetFile->Name() );
```

Error::Test()

Test whether an Error is non-empty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Test() returns nonzero if GetSeverity() != E_EMPTY.

Example

The following code attempts to establish a connection to a server, and beeps if an error occurs:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.SetPort( "magic:1666" );
client.Init( &e );

if ( e.Test() ) printf( "An error has occurred.%c\n", 13 );
```
ErrorLog methods

ErrorLog::Abort()

Abort with an error status if an error is detected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ErrorLog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If the error is empty (severity is E_EMPTY), Abort() returns. Otherwise Abort() causes the program to exit with a status of -1.

Example

Abort() is typically called after Init() or Run() to abort the program with a non-zero status if there has been a connection problem. The code in p4api.cc is one example:

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;
client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::Abort();
```

If any errors are generated during ClientApi::Init(), the Error object is non-empty, and Abort() reports the connection error before terminating the program.
**ErrorLog::Report()**

Print the text of an error to `stderr`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ErrorLog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`Report()` functions similarly to `Error::Fmt()`, but displays the text on `stderr` rather than copying it into a `StrBuf`.

**Example**

The following example displays the contents of an error.

```c++
ClientApi client;
Error e;
client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::Report();
```
**ErrorLog::SetLog( const char * )**

Redirscts this Error's Report() output to a file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ErrorLog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

After SetLog() is called on a given Error object, Report() directs its output to the specified file rather than stderr. This setting applies only to the specified Error object.

**Example**

The following example redirects an Error’s output to a log file, and then writes the Error’s text to that log file.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

ErrorLog::SetLog( "C:\Perforce\errlog" );
client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::Report();
```
**ErrorLog::SetSyslog()**

Redirects this Error's Report() output to syslog on UNIX only.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ErrorLog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method is only valid on UNIX. After it is called, the output of Report() is redirected to syslog, similar to SetLog().

**Example**

The following example redirects an Error’s output to syslog, and then outputs the Error’s text to syslog.

```cpp
ClientApi client;
Error e;

ErrorLog::SetSyslog();
client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::Report();
```
**ErrorLog::SetTag(const char *)**

Changes the standard tag used by this Error’s `Report()` method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>ErrorLog</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *tag the text of the new tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default tag is “Error”. `SetTag()` sets the new tag for the specified Error object only.

**Example**

The following example resets the tag on an Error to be “NewError”.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::SetTag( "NewError" );
```
ErrorLog::UnsetSyslog()

Stop writing errors to syslog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ErrorLog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

UnsetSyslog() reverses the effect of SetSyslog() by resetting the Error object to output to stderr.

Example

The following example prints an error message to syslog and then resets the Error back to using stderr for output.

```c
ClientApi client;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
ErrorLog::SetSyslog();
ErrorLog::Report();
ErrorLog::UnsetSyslog();
```
FileSys methods

FileSys::Chmod( FilePerm, Error * )

Modify the file mode bits of the file specified by the path protected FileSys member.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Arguments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FilePerm</td>
<td>perms</td>
<td>permissions to change the file, either FPM_RO (read only) or FPM_RW (read/write)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>*error</td>
<td>returned error status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Returns**

void

**Notes**

This method is called to make a client file writable (FPM_RW) when it is opened for edit, or to change it to read-only (FPM_RO) after a submit.

A FilePerm is an enum taking one of the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FPM_RO</td>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>leave file read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPM_RW</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>allow read and write operations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

To use Chmod() to create a configuration file and set its permissions to read-only:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
Error e;

f->Set( "c:\configfile.txt" );
f->Chmod( FPM_RO, &e );
```

To reimplement Chmod() under UNIX:
void FileSysDemo::Chmod( FilePerm perms, Error *e )
{
    int bits = IsExec() ? PERM_0777 : PERM_0666;

    if ( perms == FPM_RO )
        bits &= ~PERM_0222;

    if ( chmod( Name(), bits & ~myumask ) < 0 )
        e->Sys( "chmod", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "Debug (Chmod): %s\n", Name() );
}
**FileSys::Close( Error * )**

Close the file specified by the path protected FileSys member and release any OS resources associated with the open file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *error returned error status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of Close() is called every time a file that is currently Open() is no longer required. Typically, the handle that was returned for the Open() call is used to free up the resource.

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during the close.

**Example**

To use Close() to close an open file:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
Error e;

f->Set( "c:\\configfile.txt" );
f->Open( FOM_WRITE, &e );
f->Close( &e );
```

To reimplement Close() to report errors using Error::Sys() and provide debugging output:

```c
void FileSysDemo::Close( Error *e )
{
    if ( close( fd ) == -1 )
        e->Sys( "close", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "Debug (Close): %s\n", Name() );
}
```
**FileSys::Create( FileSysType )**

Create a new `FileSys` object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>FileSys</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>FileSysType type</code> file type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>FileSys *</code> a pointer to the new <code>FileSys</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

A `FileSysType` is an `enum` taking one of the values defined in `filesys.h`. The most commonly used `FileSysTypes` are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FST_TEXT</td>
<td>0x0001</td>
<td>file is text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FST_BINARY</td>
<td>0x0002</td>
<td>file is binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FST_ATEXT</td>
<td>0x0011</td>
<td>file is text, open only for append</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

To use `create()` to create a `FileSys` object for a log file (text file, append-only):

```cpp
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
```
**FileSys::Open( FileOpenMode, Error * )**

Open the file name specified by the path protected FileSys member for reading or writing as specified by the argument FileOpenMode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileOpenMode mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of Open() is called every time there is a need to create or access a file on the client workspace.

Operating systems typically return a handle to the opened file, which is then used to allow future read/write calls to access the file.

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during the open.

**Example**

To use open() to open a log file for writing:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
Error e;
StrBuf m;
m.Append( "example: text to append to a log file\r\n" );

f->Set( "C:\logfile.txt" );
f->Open( FOM_WRITE, &e );
f->Write( m.Text(), m.Length(), &e );
f->Close( &e );
```

To reimplement Open() to report errors with Error::Sys(), provide debugging output, and use the FileSysDemo member “fd” to hold the file handle returned from the open() system call:
```c
void FileSysDemo::Open( FileOpenMode mode, Error *e )
{
    this->mode = mode;

    int bits = ( mode == FOM_READ ) ? O_RDONLY
        : O_WRONLY|O_CREAT|O_APPEND;

    if ( ( fd = open( Name(), bits, PERM_0666 ) ) < 0 )
    {
        e->Sys( mode == FOM_READ ? "open for read" : "open for write",
                Name() );
    }

    if ( DEBUG )
    {
        printf( "Debug (Open): '%s' opened for '%s'
                Name() );
        mode == FOM_READ ? "read" : "write" );
    }
}
```
Chapter 3. Public Methods Reference

**FileSys::Read( const char *, int, Error * )**

Attempt to read `len` bytes of data from the object referenced by the file handle (returned by the `Open()` method) to the buffer pointed to by `buf`. Upon successful completion, `Read()` returns the number of bytes actually read and placed in the buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of `Read()` is called every time there is a need to read data from the file referenced by the `Open()` call.

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during I/O.

**Example**

To use `Read()` to read a line from a log file:

```c
char line[80];
m.Set( msg );
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
Error e;

f->Set( "C:\logfile.txt" );
f->Open( FOM_READ, &e );
f->Read( line, 80, &e );
f->Close( &e );
```

To reimplement `Read()` to report errors with `Error::Sys()`, provide debugging output, and use the `FileSysDemo` member “fd” to hold the file handle returned from the `read()` system call:
int FileSysDemo::Read( char *buf, int len, Error *e )
{
    int bytes;

    if ( ( bytes = read( fd, buf, len ) ) < 0 )
        e->Sys( "read", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
    {
        printf( "debug (Read): %d bytes\n", bytes );
    }

    return( bytes );
}
**FileSys::Rename( FileSys *, Error * )**

Rename the file specified by the path protected FileSys member to the file specified by the target FileSys object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FileSys *target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

On some operating systems, an unlink might be required before calling Rename().

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during the rename.

**Example**

To use Rename() to rename /usr/logs/log2 to /usr/logs/log1:

```c
FileSys *f1 = FileSys::Create( FST_TEXT );
FileSys *f2 = FileSys::Create( FST_TEXT );
Error e;

f1->Set( "/usr/logs/log1" );
f2->Set( "/usr/logs/log2" );
f1->Rename( f2, &e );
```

To reimplement Rename() to report errors with Error::Sys() and provide debugging output:

```c
void FileSysDemo::Rename( FileSys *target, Error *e )
{
    if ( rename( Name(), target->Name() ) < 0 )
        e->Sys( "rename", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "Debug (Rename): %s to %s\n", Name(), target->Name() );
}
**FileSys::Set(const StrPtr*)**

Initializes the protected `StrBuf` variable `path` to the supplied filename argument; this `path` is used by other `FileSys` member functions when reading and writing to a physical file location.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr* name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

After creating a `FileSys` object, call `Set()` to supply it with a `path`.

**Example**

To use `Set()` to set a filename:

```cpp
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_BINARY );
f->Set( "/tmp/file.bin" );
```

To reimplement `Set()` to provide debugging output:

```cpp
void FileSysDemo::Set( const StrPtr &name )
{
    // Set must initialize the protected variable "path"
    // with the filename argument "name".
    path.Set( name );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "debug (Set): %s\n", path.Text() );
}
```
**FileSys::Stat()**

Obtain information about the file specified by the path protected FileSys member.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The status bits have the following meanings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_EXISTS (0x01)</td>
<td>file exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_WRITEABLE (0x02)</td>
<td>file is user-writable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_DIRECTORY (0x04)</td>
<td>file is a directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_SYMLINK (0x08)</td>
<td>file is symlink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_SPECIAL (0x10)</td>
<td>file is a special file (in the UNIX sense)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_EXECUTABLE (0x20)</td>
<td>file is executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_EMPTY (0x40)</td>
<td>file is empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSF_HIDDEN (0x80)</td>
<td>file is invisible (hidden)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of **Stat()** is called to obtain file status every time a file is opened for read.

**Example**

To use **Stat()** to verify the existence of /usr/bin/p4:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_BINARY );
f->Set( "/usr/bin/p4" );
int state = f->Stat();
if ( state & FSF_EXISTS )
    printf( "File found\n" );
```

To reimplement **Stat()** to provide debugging output:
int FileSysDemo::Stat()
{
    int flags = 0;
    struct stat st;

    if ( DEBUG )
    {
        printf( "Debug (Stat): %s\n", Name() );
    }

    if ( stat( Name(), &st ) < 0 )
        return( flags );

    // Set internal flags
    flags |= FSF_EXISTS;
    if ( st.st_mode & S_IWUSR ) flags |= FSF_WRITEABLE;
    if ( st.st_mode & S_IXUSR ) flags |= FSF_EXECUTABLE;
    if ( S_ISDIR( st.st_mode ) ) flags |= FSF_DIRECTORY;
    if ( !S_ISREG( st.st_mode ) ) flags |= FSF_SPECIAL;
    if ( !st.st_size ) flags |= FSF_EMPTY;
    return flags;
}
FileSys::StatModTime()

Return the last modified time of the file specified by the path protected FileSys member.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 for failure, or last modified time in seconds since 00:00:00, January 1, 1970, GMT.

Notes

The default implementation of StatModTime() is called every time a client file is submitted or synced.

Example

To use StatModTime() to obtain the modification time on a log file:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
f->Set( "/usr/logs/logfile.txt" );
int time = f->StatModTime();

if ( time )
    printf( "%d", time );
```

To reimplement StatModTime() to provide debugging output:

```c
int FileSysDemo::StatModTime()
{
    struct stat st;

    if ( stat( Name(), &st ) < 0 )
        return( 0 );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "Debug (StatModTime): %s\n", Name() );

    return (int)( st.st_mtime );
}
```
**FileSys::Truncate()**

Truncate the file specified by the `path` protected `FileSys` member to zero length.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>FileSys</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of `Truncate()` is only called by the Perforce server.
**FileSys::Unlink( Error * )**

Remove the file specified by the path protected FileSys member from the filesystem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>FileSys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of Unlink() is always called if the file created is temporary.

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during removal.

**Example**

To use Unlink() to delete an old log file:

```c
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_TEXT );
Error e;

f->Set( "/usr/logs/oldlog" );
f->Unlink( &e );
```

To reimplement Unlink() to report errors with Error::Sys() and provide debugging output:

```c
void FileSysDemo::Unlink( Error *e )
{
    if ( unlink( Name() ) < 0 )
        e->Sys( "unlink", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "Debug (Unlink): %s\n", Name() );
}
```
**FileSys::Write( const char *, int, Error * )**

Attempt to write “len” bytes of data to the object referenced by the file handle (returned by the `Open()` method) from the buffer pointed to by “buf”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>FileSys</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const char *buf</code> pointer to buffer containing data to be written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>int len</code> length of data to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Error *error</code> returned error status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The default implementation of `Write()` is called every time there is a need to write data to the file created by the `Open()` call.

Your implementation must correctly report any system errors that may occur during I/O.

**Example**

To use `Write()` to write an error to a log file:

```c
StrBuf m;
m.Set( "Unknown user\r\n" );
FileSys *f = FileSys::Create( FST_ATEXT );
Error e;
f->Set( "C:\logfile.txt" );
f->Open( FOM_WRITE, &e );
f->Write( m.Text(), m.Length(), &e );
f->Close( &e );
```

To reimplement `Write()` to report errors with `Error::Sys()` and provide debugging output:

```c
void FileSysDemo::Write( const char *buf, int len, Error *e )
{
    int bytes;

    if ( ( bytes = write( fd, buf, len ) ) < 0 )
        e->Sys( "write", Name() );

    if ( DEBUG )
        printf( "debug (Write): %d bytes\n", bytes );
}
```
### Ignore methods

**Ignore::Reject( const StrPtr & path, const StrPtr & ignoreFile )**

Tests whether the provided path will be rejected when it is opened for add because it matches an entry in the provided ignore file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Ignore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; path the path to check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; ignoreFile the full path to the ignore file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int nonzero if path is ignored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Calling `Reject()` provides a preview of what will happen when files are opened for add.

If the ignore file does not exist, or is not readable, no files are rejected.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the usage of `Reject()`.

```c
#include "clientapi.h"
#include "ignore.h"

int main()
{
  ClientApi client;
  StrBuf clientPath;

  client.SetIgnoreFile( ".p4ignore" );
  clientPath = "ignore.txt";
  if ( client->GetIgnore()->Reject( *clientPath, client->GetIgnoreFile() ) )
  {
    printf( "%s is to be ignored.\n", clientPath.Text() );
  }
}
```
Ignore::RejectCheck( const StrPtr & )

Tests whether the provided path will be rejected when it is opened for add because it matches an ignore file entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Ignore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>cont StrPtr &amp;path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int nonzero if path is ignored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Calling **RejectCheck()** provides a preview of what will happen the file is opened for add.

Use **RejectCheck()** when you have to test multiple paths that may be rejected. First call **Reject()** to parse the ignore file, and then call **RejectCheck()** for each additional path that needs to be checked.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the usage of **RejectCheck()**.

```c
#include "clientapi.h"
#include "ignore.h"

int main()
{
    ClientApi client;
    StrBuf clientPath;

    client.SetIgnoreFile( ".p4ignore" );
    clientPath = "ignore.txt";
    if ( client->GetIgnore()->Reject( *clientPath, client->GetIgnoreFile() ) )
    {
        printf( "%s is to be ignored.\n", clientPath.Text() );
    }

    clientPath = "ignore2.txt";
    if ( client->GetIgnore()->Reject( *clientPath, client->GetIgnoreFile() ) )
    {
        printf( "%s is to be ignored.\n", clientPath.Text() );
    }
}
```
**KeepAlive methods**

**KeepAlive::IsAlive()**

The only method of the *KeepAlive* class, *IsAlive()* is used in applications to request that the current command be terminated by disconnecting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>Yes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><em>KeepAlive</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Use *ClientApi::SetBreak()* to establish a callback to be called every 0.5 seconds during command execution.

**See also**

*ClientApi::SetBreak()*

**Example**

The following example implements a custom *IsAlive()* that can be called three times before returning 0 and terminating the connection. If the call to run the *changes* command takes less than 1.5 seconds to complete on the server side, the program outputs the list of changes. If the call to run the *changes* command takes more than 1.5 seconds, the connection is interrupted.
#include <clientapi.h>

// subclass KeepAlive to implement a customized IsAlive function.
class MyKeepAlive : public KeepAlive
{
    public:
        int IsAlive();
};

// Set up the interrupt callback. After being called 3 times,
// interrupt 3 times, interrupt the current server operation.
int MyKeepAlive::IsAlive()
{
    static int counter = 0;
    if ( ++counter > 3 )
    {
        counter = 0;
        return( 0 );
    }
    return( 1 );
}

// Now test the callback
ClientUser ui;
ClientApi client;
MyKeepAlive cb;
Error e;

client.Init( &e );
client.SetBreak( &cb ); // SetBreak must happen after the Init
client.Run( "changes", &ui );
client.Final( &e );
MapApi methods

**MapApi::Clear()**

Empties a mapping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

After this method has been called on a MapApi object, the object is indistinguishable from a freshly-constructed object.
MapApi::Count()

Returns the number of entries currently in the mapping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The number returned by Count() may be different from the number of times that Insert() has been called. This is because MapApi automatically disambiguates itself, adding new exclusions to eliminate ambiguity between partially overlapping entries and removing entries that are redundant.

Example

The following example demonstrates Count(), GetType(), GetLeft(), and GetRight() being used to iterate over a MapApi that contains four entries after two calls to Insert().

This code produces the following output:

```
//depot/... //client/...
-//depot/d2/... //client/d2/...
-//depot/d1/... //client/d1/...
//depot/d1/... //client/d2/...
```
MapApi clientmap;

clientmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/..." ), StrRef( "//client/..." ) );
clientmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/d1/..." ), StrRef( "//client/d2/..." ) );

char c = ' ';
for ( int i = 0; i < clientmap.Count(); i++ )
{
    switch( clientmap.GetType( i ) )
    {
        case MapInclude:
            c = ' '; break;
        case MapExclude:
            c = '-'; break;
        case MapOverlay:
            c = '+'; break;
    }

    printf( "%c%s %s\n", c,
            clientmap.GetLeft( i )->Text(),
            clientmap.GetRight( i )->Text() );
}
MapApi::GetLeft( int )

Returns the left side of the specified view entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The index should be between 0 and one less than the number of mapping entries.

See also

MapApi::Count()

Example

See the example for MapApi::Count().
**MapApi::GetRight( int )**

Returns the right side of the specified view entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The index should be between 0 and one less than the number of mapping entries.

**See also**

MapApi::Count()

**Example**

See the example for MapApi::Count().
MapApi::GetType(int)

Returns the type of the specified view entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int i the index of the desired entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>MapType the entry type</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The entry type is one of MapInclude, MapExclude, and MapOverlay.

MapExclude entries negate earlier MapInclude and MapOverlay entries that map the same paths, and MapOverlay entries are not disambiguated if they overlap with earlier MapInclude entries.

In human-readable Perforce view specifications, MapExclude lines are indicated with a - character, and MapOverlay lines are indicated with a + character.

See also
MapApi::Count()

Example

See the example for MapApi::Count().
MapApi::Insert( const StrPtr &, MapType )

Adds a new entry to the mapping.

**Virtual?**  
No

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>MapApi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arguments</th>
<th>StrPtr &amp; lr</th>
<th>the path to which the entry applies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arguments</th>
<th>MapType t</th>
<th>the mapping type (by default, MapInclude)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Notes**

This Insert() overload is a convenience function that adds an entry with identical left and right sides. It is meant to represent mappings whose sole purpose is to include and exclude files, such as protection tables and label views.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the construction and use of a protection table mapping.

```c
MapApi protect;
protect.Insert( StrRef( "//..." ) );
protect.Insert( StrRef( "//private/..." ), MapExclude );

StrBuf to;
StrBuf file1( "//depot/file.txt" );
StrBuf file2( "//private/file.txt" );

printf( "%s - access %d\n", file1.Text(), protect.Translate( file1, to ) );
printf( "%s - access %d\n", file2.Text(), protect.Translate( file2, to ) );
```

This produces the following output:

```console
//depot/file.txt - access 1
//private/file.txt - access 0
```
**MapApi::Insert( const StrPtr &, const StrPtr &, MapType )**

Adds a new entry to the mapping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| StrPtr & l — the left side of the entry  
          | StrPtr & r — the right side of the entry  
          | MapType t — the mapping type (by default, MapInclude) |
| Returns  | void |

**Notes**

`Insert()` adds one new entry to a mapping at the "bottom" (highest precedence) position in the map. The `MapType` parameter indicates whether the entry is a standard inclusion (the default), an exclusion, or an overlay mapping (only useful when modeling a client view).

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the construction and use of a branch view mapping.

```cpp
MapApi branch;
branch.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/main/..." ), StrRef( "//depot/rel1/..." ) );

StrBuf source( "//depot/main/file.c" );
StrBuf target;
branch.Translate( source, target );
printf( "%s -> %s\n", source.Text(), target.Text() );
```

This produces the following output:

```plaintext
//depot/main/file.c -> //depot/rel1/file.c
```
MapApi::Join( MapApi *, MapApi * ) [static]

Joins two MapApis together to produce a combined mapping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>MapApi *left the first mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MapApi *right the second mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>MapApi * a new MapApi representing the joined maps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This overload of Join() links the right side of the first mapping to the left side of the second mapping, as if the two mappings were laid out left to right and glued together in the middle. The resulting MapApi’s left side corresponds to the first mapping’s left side, and its right side corresponds to the second mapping’s right side.

If the right side of the first mapping does not have anything in common with the left side of the second mapping, the resulting map is empty.

The other Join() overload allows more control over which side of each mapping is joined to the other, and the direction of the resulting mapping.

This function allocates a new MapApi object on the heap; the caller is responsible for deleting it.

Example

The following example demonstrates a join between a branch view and a client view.

```cpp
MapApi branchmap;
branchmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/main/..." ), StrRef( "//depot/rel1/..." ) );

MapApi clientmap;
clientmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/..." ), StrRef( "//client/depot/..." ) );

MapApi *branch_to_client = MapApi::Join( &branchmap, &clientmap );

StrBuf source( "//depot/main/file.c" );
StrBuf target;

branch_to_client->Translate( source, target );
printf( "%s -> %s\n", source.Text(), target.Text() );
delete branch_to_client;
```

This produces the following output:
//depot/main/file.c -> //client/depot/rel1/file.c
MapApi::Join( MapApi *, MapDir, MapApi *, MapDir ) [static]

Joins two MapApis together to produce a combined mapping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi *m1</td>
<td>the first mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapDir d1</td>
<td>the orientation of the first mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapApi *m2</td>
<td>the second mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapDir d2</td>
<td>the orientation of the second mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>MapApi *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This overload of Join() works exactly like the simpler two-argument overload, but allows the caller to reverse either or both mappings before they are joined together. Specifying MapLeftRight as the direction for both mappings will produce the same result as the two-argument Join().

If the two mappings do not have anything in common at the join point, the result is an empty mapping.

This function allocates a new MapApi object on the heap; the caller is responsible for deleting it.

Example

The following example demonstrates a join between a branch view and a client view, with both mappings reversed so that the client path is on the left side of the result and the branch source is on the right side.

```c
MapApi branchmap;
branchmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/main/..." ), StrRef( "//depot/rel1/..." ) );

MapApi clientmap;
clientmap.Insert( StrRef( "//depot/..." ), StrRef( "//client/depot/..." ) );

MapApi *client_to_branch = MapApi::Join
( &clientmap, MapRightLeft, &branchmap, MapRightLeft );

StrBuf clientFile( "//client/depot/rel1/file.c" );
StrBuf branchFile;

client_to_branch->Translate( clientFile, branchFile );
printf( "%s -> %s\n", clientFile.Text(), branchFile.Text() );
delete client_to_branch;
```
Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
//client/depot/rel1/file.c -> //depot/main/file.c
```
MapApi::Translate( const StrPtr & from, StrBuf & to, MapDir d )

Translates a file path from one side of a mapping to the other.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>MapApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; from the input path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrBuf &amp; to the output path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MapDir d the direction in which to translate (by default, MapLeftRight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>bool whether or not the translation succeeded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The `Translate()` function is used to determine the effect of the mapping on any particular file. In the case of a two-sided mapping (such as a client view), it indicates where any given depot file maps in the client, or vice versa. In the case of a one-sided mapping (such as a protection table), it simply indicates whether a particular file is mapped at all.

If the specified `MapDir` is `MapLeftRight`, the input path is translated from the left side of the mapping to the right side of the mapping. If the `MapDir` is `MapRightLeft`, the mapping is effectively inverted, so that the input path is translated from the right side to the left.

If the input path does not match anything in the left side of the mapping (or the right side in the `MapRightLeft` case), the translation fails just as if the input path had been excluded from the mapping.

`Translate()` is designed to map single files. To model the effect of passing a broader path through a mapping, create a new one-sided mapping that represents that path and `Join()` it with the other mapping.

**Examples**

See the examples for `Insert()` and `Join()`. 
Options methods

**Options::GetValue( char opt, int subopt )**

Returns the value of a flag previously stored by `Options::Parse()`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>Options</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char opt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int subopt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

You must call `Options::Parse()` before calling `GetValue()`.

If a flag does not occur on the command line, `GetValue()` returns `NULL`.

If a flag is provided without a value, `GetValue()` returns “true”.

If a flag appears only once on a command line, extract the value of its arguments by calling `GetValue()` with a subopt of zero, or use the `[ ]` operator.

If a flag occurs more than once on a command line, extract the value supplied with each occurrence by calling `Options::GetValue()` once for each occurrence, using different subopt values.

**See also**

`Options::Parse()` `Options::operator[]`

**Example**

Executing the following code produces the following output:

```
$ getvalue -h -c1 -c2 -d3
opts.GetValue( h, 0 ) value is true
opts.GetValue( c, 0 ) value is 1
opts.GetValue( c, 1 ) value is 2
opts.GetValue( d, 0 ) value is 3
```
```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <error.h>
#include <options.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    // Parse options.
    Error *e = new Error();
    ErrorId usage = { E_FAILED, "Usage: getvalue -h for usage." };

    Options opts;

    // strip out the program name before parsing
    argc--;
    argv;

    char *ParseOpts = "ha:b:c:d:e:f:"
    opts.Parse( argc, argv, ParseOpts, OPT_ANY, usage, e );

    if ( e-&gt;Test() )
    {
        StrBuf msg;
        e-&gt;Fmt( &amp;msg ); // See Error::Fmt()
        printf( "ERROR:\n%s", msg.Text() );
        return 1;
    }

    char *iParseOpts = ParseOpts;
    int isubopt;
    StrPtr *s;

    // Print values for options.
    while( *iParseOpts != '\0' )
    {
        if ( *iParseOpts != ':' )
        {
            isubopt = 0;
            while( s = opts.GetValue( *iParseOpts, isubopt ) )
            {
                printf( "opts.GetValue( %c, %d ) value is %s\n", *
                *iParseOpts, isubopt, s-&gt;Text() );
                isubopt;
            }
            iParseOpts++;
        }
        return 0;
    }
```
**Options::operator[]( char opt )**

Returns the value of a flag previously stored by `Options::Parse()`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char opt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

You must call `Options::Parse()` before using the [] operator.

If a flag does not occur on the command line, the [] operator returns `NULL`.

If a flag is provided without a value, the [] operator returns “true”.

If a flag appears once on a command line, the [] operator returns its argument. This is equivalent to calling `Options::GetValue()` with a `subopt` of zero.

The [] operator is sufficient for extracting the value of any flag which does not have more than one value associated with it. If a flag appears more than once on the same command line, you must use `Options::GetValue()`, specifying a different `subopt` value for each appearance.

**See also**

`Options::Parse()` `Options::GetValue()`

**Example**

The following code parses some of the standard Perforce global options and stores them in a `ClientApi` object.

If the -h option is supplied, the program also displays a brief message.
```c
#include <iostream>
#include <clientapi.h>
#include <error.h>
#include <errornum.h>
#include <msgclient.h>
#include <options.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    Error *e = new Error();
    ErrorId usage = { E_FAILED, "Usage: myapp -h for usage." };  

    // Bypass argv[0] before parsing
    argc--;  
    argv++;  

    Options opts;
    opts.Parse( argc, argv, "hc:H:d:u:p:P:", OPT_ANY, usage, e );

    if ( e->Test() )
    {
        StrBuf msg;
        e->Fmt( &msg );   // See Error::Fmt()
        printf( "Error: %s", msg.Text() );
        return 1;
    }

    ClientApi client;
    StrPtr *s;

    // Get command line overrides of client, host, cwd, user, port, pass
    if ( s = opts[ 'h' ] ) printf ( "User asked for help\n" );
    if ( s = opts[ 'c' ] ) client.SetClient ( s );
    if ( s = opts[ 'H' ] ) client.SetHost ( s );
    if ( s = opts[ 'd' ] ) client.SetCwd ( s );
    if ( s = opts[ 'u' ] ) client.SetUser ( s );
    if ( s = opts[ 'p' ] ) client.SetPort ( s );
    if ( s = opts[ 'P' ] ) client.SetPassword ( s );

    // Perform desired operation(s) with your ClientApi here
    return 0;
}
```
### Options::Parse( int &, char ** &argv, const char *, int, const ErrorId &, Error * )

Manipulate `argc` and `argv` to extract command line arguments and associated values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>int &amp;argc</code> Number of arguments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>char ** &amp;argv</code> An array of arguments to parse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const char *opts</code> The list of valid options to extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>int flag</code> A flag indicating how many arguments are expected to remain when parsing is complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>const ErrorId &amp;usage</code> An error message containing usage tips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

You must bypass `argv[0]` (that is, the name of the calling program) before calling `Options::Parse()`. This is most easily done by decrementing `argc` and incrementing `argv`.

An argument by be of the form `-a value` or `-a.value`. Although an argument of the form `-a value` is passed as two entries in `argv`, the `Options::Parse()` method parses it as one logical argument.

As arguments are scanned from the caller’s `argv`, the caller’s `argc` and `argv` are modified to reflect the arguments scanned. Scanning stops when the next argument either:

- does not begin with a `-`, or
- is a `-` only, or
- is not in the array of expected options.

Once scanning has stopped, `argc` and `argv` are returned "as-is"; that is, they are returned as they were when scanning stopped. There is no "shuffling" of arguments.

The `opts` argument is a format string indicating which options are to be scanned, and whether these options are to have associated values supplied by the user. Flags with associated values must be followed by a colon ("":"`) or a period ("."`) in the format string. Using a colon allows arguments to be specified in the form `-a value` or `-a.value`; using a period allows only the `-a value` form.

If, based on the expectation set in the format string, the actual option string in `argv` does not provide a value where one is expected, an error is generated.
For instance, the `p4` Command Line Client’s -V and -? flags are expected to be supplied without values, but the -p flag is expected to be accompanied with a setting for `P4PORT`. This is the format string used by the `p4` Command Line Client:


Characters followed by colons (c, C, and so on) are command line flags that take values; all characters not followed by colons (?, G, R, h, s, and V) represent command line flags that require no values.

There is a limit of 20 options per command line, as defined in `options.h` by the constant `N_OPTS`.

The flag argument should be one of the following values (defined in `options.h`):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPT_ONE</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>Exactly one argument is expected to remain after parsing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_TWO</td>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>Exactly two arguments are expected to remain after parsing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_THREE</td>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>Exactly three arguments are expected to remain after parsing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_MORE</td>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>More than two arguments (three or more) are to remain after parsing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_NONE</td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>Require that zero arguments remain after parsing; if arguments remain after parsing, set an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_MAKEONE</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td>If no arguments remain after parsing, create one that points to <code>NULL</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_OPT</td>
<td>0x11</td>
<td>ONE, or ONE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_ANY</td>
<td>0x1F</td>
<td>ONE, TWO, THREE, MORE, or NONE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_DEFAULT</td>
<td>0x2F</td>
<td>ONE, TWO, THREE, MORE, or MAKEONE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPT_SOME</td>
<td>0x0F</td>
<td>ONE, TWO, THREE, or MORE.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also

`Options::GetValue()` `Options::operator[](`)

Example

The following code and examples illustrate how `Options::Parse()` works.
```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <error.h>
#include <options.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    // Parse options.
    Error *e = new Error();
    ErrorId usage = { E_FAILED, "Usage: parse optionstring flag args" };
    Options opts;

    // strip out the program name before parsing
    argc--;
    argv;

    // next argument is options to be parsed
    char *ParseOpts = argv[ 0 ];
    argc--;
    argv;

    // next argument is number of arguments remaining after parse
    int flag = strtol( argv[ 0 ], NULL, 0 );
    argc--;
    argv;

    // Echo pre-parse values
    int iargv;
    printf( "Prior to Options::Parse call:\n"
    );
    printf( "  ParseOpts is %s
", ParseOpts );
    printf( "  flag is 0x%2.2X
", flag );
    printf( "  argc is %d
", argc );
    for ( iargv = 0; iargv < argc; iargv )
    {
        printf( "  argv[ %d ] is %s
", iargv, argv[ iargv ] );
    }
    printf( "\n" );

    opts.Parse( argc, argv, ParseOpts, flag, usage, e );
    if ( e->Test() )
    {
        // See example for Error::Fmt()
        StrBuf msg;
        e->Fmt( &msg );
        printf( "ERROR:\n%s
", msg.Text() );
    }

    char *iParseOpts = ParseOpts;
    int isubopt;
    StrPtr *s;

    // Print values for options.
    while( *iParseOpts != '\0' )
    {
        if ( *iParseOpts != ':' )
        {
            isubopt = 0;
            while( s = opts.GetValue( *iParseOpts, isubopt ) )
            {
                printf( "opts.GetValue( %c, %d ) value is %s\n"
                , *iParseOpts, isubopt, s->Text() );
            }
            isubopt;
        }
    }
    return 0;
}
```
Invoke `parsedemo` with a format string, a flag (as defined in `options.h`) to specify the number of options expected, and a series of arguments.

For instance, to allow arguments -a, -b and -c, where -a and -b take values, but -c does not take a value, and to use a flag of `OPT_NONE` (0x10) to require that no options remain unparsed after the call to `Options::Parse()`, invoke `parsedemo` as follows.

```
$ parsedemo a:b:c 0x10 -a vala -b valb -c
```

Arguments of the form `-c one` are passed as two entries in `argv`, but parsed as one logical argument:

```
$ parsedemo ha:b:c:d:e: 0x10 -cone
Prior to Options::Parse call:
  ParseOpts is ha:b:c:d:e:
  flag is 0x10
  argc is 1
  argv[ 0 ] is -cone

  opts.GetValue( c, 0 ) value is one

After Options::Parse call:
  argc is 0

$ parsedemo ha:b:c:d:e: 0x10 -c one
Prior to Options::Parse call:
  ParseOpts is ha:b:c:d:e:
  flag is 0x10
  argc is 2
  argv[ 0 ] is -c
  argv[ 1 ] is one

  opts.GetValue( c, 0 ) value is one

After Options::Parse call:
  argc is 0
```

Use of a period in the options string disallows the `-c one` form for the c option:
Arguments not in the format string are permitted or rejected with the use of different flag values; OPT_NONE (0x10) requires that no arguments remain after the call to $options::Parse$, while OPT_ONE (0x01) requires that one argument remain.
Options::Parse( int &, StrPtr * &, const char *, int, const ErrorId &, Error * )

Extract command line arguments and associated values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int &amp;argc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrPtr * &amp;argv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *opts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const ErrorId &amp;usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See the notes for the char ** &argv version of Options::Parse() for details.

See also

Options::Parse()
ServerHelperApi methods

ServerHelperApi::ClearProtocol()

Clear any protocol variables set using ServerHelperApi::SetProtocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

ClearProtocol() unsets any protocol variables previously set using SetProtocol() or SetProtocolV(). Calling ClearProtocol()
ServerHelperApi::CloneFromRemote(int,const StrPtr*,ClientUser*,Error*)

Populates a personal server based on a remote specification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int depth specifies the number of revisions to fetch of each file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const StrPtr *df optional debug flag; set to 0 to leave it unset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ClientUser *ui a pointer to ClientUser object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e a pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int indicates success of command</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method stores the remote generated by either PrepareToCloneFilepath() or PrepareToCloneRemote() as origin and then runs `p4 fetch` to populate the local server. This method should be run against the instance of ServerHelperApi class configured as the personal server.

A return value of 1 indicates a successful clone. If the method returns 0, check the Error object to see what occurred.

**See also**

ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath() ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote()
Example

// Basic "p4 clone" flow:
ClientUser ui;
Error e;
ServerHelperApi personalServer( &e );

if( e.Test() )
  return 0;

personalServer.SetDvcsDir( "/path/to/root", &e );
personalServer.SetProg( "MyApp" ); // optional
personalServer.SetVersion( "version" ); // optional

if( personalServer.Exists() )
  return 0;

ServerHelperApi sharedServer( &e );
sharedServer.SetPort( "1666" );
sharedServer.SetProg( "MyApp" ); // optional
sharedServer.SetVersion( "version" ); // optional

// Fetch the remote spec
if( !personalServer.PrepareToCloneRemote( &sharedServer, remote, &ui ) )
  return 0;

// Create the personal server
// This returns the exit code from p4d, so 0 is success
if( personalServer.InitLocalServer( &ui ) )
  return 0;

// Fetch from the remote
if( !personalServer.CloneFromRemote( 0, 0, &ui ) )
  return 0;
ServerHelperApi::CloneFromRemote(int, const char*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Populates a personal server based on a remote specification.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int depth specifies the number of revisions to fetch for each file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *df optional debug flag; set to 0 to leave it unset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ClientUser *ui a pointer to a ClientUser object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e a pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int indicates success of command</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See the notes for the StrPtr* version of CloneFromRemote() for details.
ServerHelperApi::CopyConfiguration(ServerHelperApi*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Copies server configuration information from a shared server in preparation for creating a matching personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi* remote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ClientUser *ui pointer to a ClientUser object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This method gets the case sensitivity and Unicode settings from a shared server. For a personal server to push and fetch against a shared server it must have matching case sensitivity and Unicode settings. Call this method prior to running InitLocalServer() to ensure that the new personal server will work properly with the shared server. This method can only be run if the personal server does not exist. Use the Exists() method to test to see if the personal server already exists.

Example

```c++
// Discover the case sensitivity and unicode settings
if( !personalServer.CopyConfiguration( &centralServer, &ui, &e ) )
    return 1;

// Create the local server
if( personalServer.InitLocalServer( &ui, &e ) )
    return 1;
```
ServerHelperApi::Exists(ClientUser*, Error*)

Checks for the existence of a personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ClientUser * ui A ClientUser object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int returns 1 if a personal server exists in the root dir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Many ServerHelperApi methods expect there to be no existing server in the path set by SetDvcsDir(). Exists() is useful for avoiding potential errors caused by pre-existing servers.

Example

```c
// Check that we don't already have a DVCS tree at the target directory
personalServer.SetDvcsDir( "/User/home/dev", &e );
if( e.Test() )
    return 1;

if( personalServer.Exists( &ui, &e ) )
    return 1;
```
ServerHelperApi::GetCaseFlag()

Gets the currently set case sensitivity flag value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr     returns '-C0' or '-C1' or an empty StrPtr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Call after running CopyConfiguration() or SetCaseFlag() to see the value that will be used when initializing the personal server.

See also

ServerHelperApi::GetUnicode()
ServerHelperApi::GetClient()

Get the client workspace associated with this connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr&amp;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method has the same behavior as the ClientApi::GetClient() method.
ServerHelperApi::GetClient(Error*)

Creates and initializes a ClientApi object for the specified server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>ClientApi*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This is a convenience method to get a ClientApi object against the server associated with the ServerHelperApi object. GetClient() is the equivalent of creating a new ClientApi object, setting the P4PORT, P4CLIENT, and P4USER, and then running ClientApi::Init(). As with ClientApi::Init(), protocol variables must be set using SetProtocol() before running GetClient().

See also

ClientApi::Init()

Example

```cpp
// Create personal server
personalServer.CloneFromRemote( 0, 0, debug, &ui, &e )

// Turn on tagged output for the client
personalServer.SetProtocolV( P4Tag::v_tag );

// Get an init'ed ClientApi object
ClientApi *client = personalServer.GetClient( &e );
if( !client )
    return 1;

// Run 'p4 info'
client->RunTag( "info", &ui );
```
ServerHelperApi::GetDvcsDir()

Get the path to root of the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; the root path of the personal server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See ClientApi::GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.
**ServerHelperApi::GetPort()**

Get the connection information for this server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; the hostname and port for the server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See ClientApi::GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.
**ServerHelperApi::GetProg()**

Get the application name set in the 'prog' variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; the name of your application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See `ClientApi::GetClient()` for more about the StrPtr return value.

**See also**

`ServerHelperApi::SetProg()`
ServerHelperApi::GetQuiet()

Checks whether quiet output is enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>returns 1 if quiet output is enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If quiet is enabled, the output from clone and init are greatly reduced.
ServerHelperApi::GetUnicode()

Return the Unicode flag setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

When a personal server is initialized it can either be in Unicode mode or not. If set to use Unicode mode all filenames and metadata will be translated from the code page used by the local machine into UTF-8. To be able to push or fetch, a personal server must match the Unicode setting of the shared server. Use the CopyConfiguration() method to copy the Unicode and case-sensitivity settings from the shared before initializing the personal server.

See also

ServerHelperApi::GetCaseFlag()
**ServerHelperApi::GetUser()**

Get the user name that is currently associated with the server connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; the active user name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See ClientApi::GetClient() for more about the StrPtr return value.
**ServerHelperApi::GetVersion()**

Get the application name set in the 'version' variable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>ServerHelperApi</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>const StrPtr &amp;</code> the version of your application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See `ClientApi::GetClient()` for more about the `StrPtr` return value.

**See also**

`ServerHelperApi::GetProg()`
ServerHelperApi::InitLocalServer(ClientUser *, Error *)

Creates the personal server based on configured settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ClientUser *ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This method does the work of creating the personal server using the settings that have been previously set on the ServerHelperApi object. As part of creating the personal server it writes the P4CONFIG and P4IGNORE files, creates the .p4root dir, sets the case sensitivity and Unicode flags, creates the requisite serverId and server spec, and generates a protect table to restrict access to localhost.

If you are cloning from an existing shared server you will need to follow your call to InitLocalServer() with a call to CloneFromRemote(). InitLocalServer() only creates the personal server, it does not populate it.

**Example**

```c++
ClientUser ui;
Error e;
ServerHelperApi server( &e );

if( e.Test() )
    return 0;

server.SetDvcsDir( "/path/to/dvcs" );
server.SetProg( "MyApp" ); // optional
server.SetVersion( "version" ); // optional

if( server.Exists() )
    return 0;

// The unicode and case-sensitivity options must be set _before_
// InitLocalServer() is called. These can be set manually or
// discovered.

server.SetUnicode( true );
server.SetCaseSensitivity( "-C0" );

if( !server.InitLocalServer( &ui ) )
    return 0;
```
ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath(ServerHelperApi*, const char*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Creates a remote specification based on the provided filepath.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class</strong></td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arguments</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi*</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi object representing the shared server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*remote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const char *path</td>
<td>depot path to clone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error *e</td>
<td>an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Returns</strong></td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>returns 1 if successful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This creates a new remote spec based on the provided filepath. It also checks that `p4 fetch` is allowed on the remote server specified.

**See also**

ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote()

**Example**

```c
ServerHelperApi remoteServer( &e );
remoteServer.SetPort( "1666" );
remoteServer.SetProg( "MyApp" ); // optional
remoteServer.SetVersion( "1.0" ); // optional

// Generate the remote spec
if( !localServer.PrepareToCloneFilepath( &remoteServer, path, &ui ) )
    return 0;

// Create the local server
// This returns the exit code from p4d, so 0 is success
if( localServer.InitLocalServer( &ui ) )
    return 0;

// Fetch from the remote
if( !localServer.CloneFromRemote( 0, 0, &ui ) )
    return 0;
```
ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath(ServerHelperApi*, const StrPtr*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Creates a remote specification based on the provided filepath.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServerHelperApi *remote</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi object representing the shared server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const StrPtr *path</td>
<td>depot path to clone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error *e</td>
<td>a pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See the const char * version of PrepareToCloneFilepath() for usage details.
ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote(ServerHelperApi*, const char*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Creates a remote specification based on the provided remote from the shared server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| ServerHelperApi *remote  
|          | const char *remote  
|          | Error *e |
| Returns  | int  
|          | returns 1 if successful |

**Notes**

This creates a new remote spec based on the provided remote spec stored on the shared server. It also checks that `p4 fetch` is allowed on the remote server specified.

**See also**

[ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath()](#)

**Example**

```c
ServerHelperApi remoteServer( &e );
remoteServer.SetPort( "1666" );
remoteServer.SetProg( "MyApp" ); // optional
remoteServer.SetVersion( "1.0" ); // optional

// Copy the remote spec from the shared server
if( !localServer.PrepareToCloneFilepath( &remoteServer, remote, &ui ) )
    return 0;

// Create the local server
// This returns the exit code from p4d, so 0 is success
if( localServer.InitLocalServer( &ui ) )
    return 0;

// Fetch from the remote
if( !localServer.CloneFromRemote( 0, 0, &ui ) )
    return 0;
```
ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneRemote(ServerHelperApi*, const StrPtr*, ClientUser*, Error*)

Creates a remote specification based on the provided remote from the shared server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi *remote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ServerHelperApi object representing the shared server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const StrPtr *remote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>name of remote spec on shared server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>returns 1 if successful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See the const char * version of PrepareToCloneRemote() for details.

**See also**

ServerHelperApi::PrepareToCloneFilepath()
ServerHelperApi::SetCaseFlag(const char*, Error*)

Sets the case flag for an uninitialized personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This sets the case sensitivity flag used when initializing a personal server. It can be set to '-C0' or '-C1'; '-C0' indicates the server is case-sensitive while '-C1' causes the server to be case-insensitive.

See also

ServerHelperApi::SetUnicode()
ServerHelperApi::SetCaseFlag(const StrPtr*, Error*)

Sets the case flag for an uninitialized personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *flag the case sensitivity value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e pointer to an Error object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Returns void

Notes

See the const char * version of GetCaseFlag() for usage details.
ServerHelperApi::SetClient(const char*)

Sets the client workspace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *name the name of the client workspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the client workspace that should be used when connecting to the server.
ServerHelperApi::SetClient(const StrPtr*)

Sets the client workspace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *name the name of the client workspace to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Sets the client workspace that should be used when connecting to the server.
### ServerHelperApi::SetDefaultStream(const char*)

Sets the default stream name for the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *name the name of the stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the name of the stream to create when initializing the personal server. This is the equivalent of the `-c` flag when using the command line interface. Running `PrepareToCloneRemote()` will override the value set by `SetDefaultStream()`.
ServerHelperApi::SetDefaultStream(const StrPtr*)

Sets the default stream name for the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See the const char * version of SetDefaultStream() for usage details.
ServerHelperApi::SetDvcsDir(const char*)

Sets the root dir for the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the directory that will be used to hold the personal server. The directory should not already have a personal server in it or InitLocalServer() will fail. SetDvcsDir() does not check for an existing server; use the Exists() method after running SetDvcsDir() to test for an existing personal server.
ServerHelperApi::SetDvcsDir(const StrPtr*)

Sets the root dir for the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *path full path to the root directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>*e an Error object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int returns 0 if there is an error, 1 if successful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See the const char * version of SetDvcsDir() for usage details.
**ServerHelperApi::SetPort(const char*)**

Sets the server connection information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *port the hostname and port to connect to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the hostname and port that will be connected to. It should be of the form 'hostname:port' such as 'helix.perforce.com:1666'.
ServerHelperApi::SetPort(const StrPtr*)

Sets the server connection information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *name the hostname and port to connect to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the hostname and port that will be connected to. It should be of the form 'hostname:port' such as 'helix.perforce.com:1666'.
**ServerHelperApi::SetProg(const char*)**

Sets the program name for your application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *name the name of your application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the program name for your application. This name will show up in the logs of any server your application runs against. Setting a program name makes it much easier to identify tools which are not running properly and is highly recommended.
ServerHelperApi::SetProg(const StrPtr*)

Sets the program name for your application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *name the name of your application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

See the const char * version of SetProg() for usage details.
### ServerHelperApi::SetProtocol(const char*, const char*)

Adds protocol tags for the [ServerHelperApi::GetClient()](#) method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *p, the protocol being set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *v, the value to set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See [SetProtocol()](#) on ClientApi for details.
ServerHelperApi::SetProtocolV(const char*)

Adds protocol tags for the ServerHelperApi::GetClient() method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *p a single string with the protocol to set and the value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See SetProtocolV on ClientApi for details.
ServerHelperApi::SetQuiet()

Enables reduced output for clone and init.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Disables informational messages when running `CloneFromRemote()`.
ServerHelperApi::SetUnicode(int)

Sets or unsets the Unicode flag on the personal server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int set to 1 to enable Unicode in the personal server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This method is used to enable Unicode mode when initializing a personal server. This method needs to be called before calling InitLocalServer(). The Unicode setting of the personal server must match the Unicode setting of any shared servers it will push or fetch content to. CopyConfiguration() can be used to ensure the personal server matches the settings of the shared server.
**ServerHelperApi::SetUser(const char*)**

Sets the user account for connecting to the server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *name the user name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Sets the user name for connecting to the associated server. The user must have permission to access any files being cloned from the shared server.
**ServerHelperApi::SetUser(const StrPtr*)**

Sets the user account for connecting to the server.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class</strong></td>
<td><strong>ServerHelperApi</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arguments</th>
<th>const StrPtr *name</th>
<th>the user name to use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Returns</th>
<th>void</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Notes**

See the `const char *` version of `SetUser()` for usage details.
ServerHelperApi::SetVersion(const char*)

Sets the version string for your application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Args</td>
<td>const char *version the version information for your application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Sets the version string for your application. This version will show up in the logs of any server your application runs against. Setting a version makes it much easier to identify tools which are not running properly and is highly recommended.

See also

ServerHelperApi::SetProg()
ServerHelperApi::SetVersion(const StrPtr*)

Sets the version string for your application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>ServerHelperApi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *name the version information for your application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

See the const char * version of SetVersion() for usage details.
Signaler methods

**Signaler::Block()**

Cause interrupt signals from the user to be ignored until a subsequent call to **Signaler::Catch()**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Signaler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*Block()* does not actually block the signals, but causes the process to ignore them.

For portability reasons, *Block()* and *Catch()* use the BSD/ANSI C *signal(2)* function rather than the POSIX *sigaction()*.  

**See also**

*Signaler::Catch()* *Signaler::OnIntr()*

**Example**

```c
#include <unistd.h> // for sleep()
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <signaler.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    // Block ^C
    printf( "For the next 5 seconds, ^C will be ignored\n" );
    signaler.Block();
    sleep( 5 );

    printf( "Enabling ^C again\n" );
    signaler.Catch();
    for ( ; ; )
        sleep( 60 );
    exit( 0 );
}
```
**Signaler::Catch()**

Allow interrupt signals from the user to be delivered once more following a previous call to `Signaler::Block()`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Signaler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`Catch()` does not replace your signal handler if you have already replaced the `Signaler` class' handler with one of your own using the ANSI `signal(2)` function.

For portability reasons, `Block()` and `Catch()` use the BSD/ANSI C `signal(2)` function rather than the POSIX `sigaction()`.

**See also**

`Signaler::Block()` `Signaler::OnIntr()`

**Example**

```c
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    // Block ^C
    printf( "For the next 5 seconds, ^C will be ignored\n" );
    signaler.Block();
    sleep( 5 );

    printf( "Enabling ^C again\n" );
    signaler.Catch();
    for ( ; ; )
        sleep( 60 );
    exit( 0 );
}
```
**Signaler::DeleteOnIntr( void * )**

Removes a function previously registered using `OnIntr()` from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Signaler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>void *ptr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Virtual?
No

### Class
*Signaler*

### Arguments
void *ptr

Pointer to the data item with which the original function was registered

### Returns
void

**See also**

*Signaler::OnIntr() Signaler::Intr()*
Example

```c
#include <unistd.h>    // for sleep()
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <signaler.h>

class MyClass
{
    public:
        void Set( StrPtr *d ) { data = *d; }
        const StrPtr *Get() { return &data; }
        void Identify() { printf( "I'm %s\n", data.Text() ); }
    private:
        StrBuf data;
};

static void InterruptHandler( void *p )
{
    MyClass *m = ( MyClass * )p;
    m->Identify();
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf data;
    MyClass *list[ 5 ];

    for ( int i = 1; i <= 5; i++ )
    {
        data.Set( "Object" );
        data << i;
        MyClass *p = new MyClass;
        list[ i - 1 ] = p;
        p->Set( &data );
        signaler.OnIntr( InterruptHandler, (void *)p );
    }

    // Unregister Object 3
    signaler.DeleteOnIntr( list[ 2 ] );

    printf( "Hit ^C to fire the interrupt handler\n" );
    for (;;)
        sleep( 60 );
    exit( 0 );
}
```
**Signaler::Intr()**

Coordinate execution of all functions registered by `Signaler::OnIntr()`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>Signaler</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`Intr()` is the `Signaler` class’s main handler for interrupt signals.

Most Perforce client applications do not need to call `Intr()` directly, because it is called directly from the internal handler function that catches the interrupt signals.

This internal handler function also causes the process to exit, returning an exit status of -1 to the operating system. (For instance, `signaler.Intr(); exit(-1)`)

If you require more flexible or complex interrupt handling, replace the default interrupt handler function with your own by using the ANSI C `signal(2)` function, and call `Intr()` to execute the registered functions.

**Caveat**

`Intr()` does not deregister functions after they have been called. When calling a registered function twice might cause a failure, immediately deregister it using `DeleteOnIntr()` after the function has been called.

**See also**

`Signaler::OnIntr()`
Example

```c
#include <unistd.h>    // for sleep()
#include <signal.h>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <signaler.h>

class MyClass
{
public:
    void         Set( StrPtr *d ) { data = *d; }
    const StrPtr *Get()           { return &data; }
    void         Identify()       { printf( "I'm %s\n", data.Text() ); }

private:
    StrBuf       data;
};

static int intrCount = 0;
static const int maxIntr = 3;

// Replacement handler for SIGINT signals. Overrides Signaler class's
// default handler to avoid immediate exit.

static void trap_interrupt( int sig )
{
    intrCount++;
    printf( "Received SIGINT. Calling registered functions...\n" );
    signaler.Intr();
    printf( "All functions done\n\n" );
    if ( intrCount >= maxIntr )
    {
        printf( "Interrupt limit hit. Exiting...\n" );
        exit( 0 );
    }
}

static void InterruptHandler( void *p )
{
    MyClass      *m = ( MyClass * )p;
    m->Identify();

    // Don't identify this object again
    signaler.DeleteOnIntr( p );
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    signal( SIGINT, trap_interrupt );
    signaler.Catch();
}'''
```
int objCount = 5;
int nextId = 1;
for (; ; )
{
    int i;
    for ( i = nextId; i < nextId + objCount; i++ )
    {
        StrBuf data;
        data.Set( "Object" );
        data << i;

        MyClass *p = new MyClass;
        p->Set( &data );

        printf( "Registering %s\n", data.Text() );
        signaler.OnIntr( InterruptHandler, ( void * )p );
    }

    nextId = i;
    printf( "\n" );
    printf( "Hit ^C to fire the interrupt handler [%d to go]\n",
            maxIntr - intrCount );
    sleep( 10 );
}

exit( 0 );
}
Signaler::OnIntr( SignalFunc, void * )

Register a function and argument to be called when an interrupt signal is received.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Signaler</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments   | SignalFunc callback
|             | Pointer to a function to call on receipt of an interrupt signal.
|             | The function must have the prototype
|             | void func( void *ptr ) |
| void *ptr   | Pointer to a data item to pass to the callback function when invoking it. |
| Returns     | void |

Notes

Functions are called in the reverse order that they are registered.

See also

Signaler::DeleteOnIntr() Signaler::Intr()
Example

```c
#include <unistd.h>     // for sleep()
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <signaler.h>

class MyClass
{
public:
    void         Set( StrPtr *d ) { data = *d; }
    const StrPtr *Get()           { return &data; }
    void         Identify()       { printf( "I'm %s\n", data.Text() ); }

private:
    StrBuf       data;
};

static void InterruptHandler( void *p )
{
    MyClass      *m = ( MyClass * )p;
    m->Identify();
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    for ( int i = 1; i <= 5; i++ )
    {
        StrBuf data;
        data.Set( "Object" );
        data <<= i;
        MyClass *p = new MyClass;
        p->Set( &data );
        signaler.OnIntr( InterruptHandler, ( void * )p );
    }

    printf( "Hit ^C to fire the interrupt handler\n" );
    for ( ; ; )
        sleep( 60 );
    exit( 0 );
}
**Signaler::Signaler() (constructor)**

Constructs a new `Signaler` object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>Signaler</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

There is rarely a need for API users to construct `Signaler` objects themselves. Use the global `Signaler` variable `signaler` instead.

**See also**

`Signaler::OnIntr()` `Signaler::DeleteOnIntr()`
StrBuf methods

StrBuf::Alloc( int )

Allocate an additional specified number of bytes to a StrBuf. The string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer is logically extended.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>char *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The length of the StrBuf is incremented by the len argument.

If the memory for the StrBuf's buffer is not large enough, enough new memory is allocated to contiguously contain the extended string. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. (All StrBuf member functions with the potential to increase the length of a StrBuf manage memory this way.)

A call to Alloc() might change the string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer; do not rely on pointer arithmetic to determine the new pointer, because the call to Alloc() might have moved the buffer location.
Example

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
  StrBuf sb;
  char *p;

  sb.Set( "xyz" );

  cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns ";
  cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
  cout << "(int)sb.Text() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 0x" << hex;
  cout << setw( 8 ) << setfill( '0' ) << (int)sb.Text() << dec << "\n";
  cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns ";
  cout << sb.Length() << "\n";

  p = sb.Alloc( 70 );   // allocate in StrBuf

  cout << "sb.Text() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns (first three bytes) ";
  cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
  cout << "(int)sb.Text() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 0x" << hex;
  cout << setw( 8 ) << setfill( '0' ) << (int)sb.Text() << dec << "\n";
  cout << "(int)sb.Alloc( 70 ) returned 0x" << hex;
  cout << setw( 8 ) << setfill( '0' ) << (int)p << dec << "\n";
  cout << "sb.Length() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns ";
  cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sb.Text() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns "xyz"
(int)sb.Text() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 0x0804a9a0
sb.Length() prior to sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 3

sb.Text() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns (first three bytes) "xyz"
(int)sb.Text() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 0x0804a9b0
(int)sb.Alloc( 70 ) returned 0x0804a9b3
sb.Length() after sb.Alloc( 70 ) returns 73
```
**StrBuf::Append( const char * )**

Append a null-terminated string to a `StrBuf`. The string is logically appended to the string pointed to by the `StrBuf`'s buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>StrBuf</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const char *buf</code> pointer to the first byte of the null-terminated string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>void</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The `StrBuf`'s length is incremented by the number of bytes prior to the first null byte in the string.

If the memory for the `StrBuf`'s buffer is not large enough, new memory to contiguously contain the results of appending the null-terminated string is allocated. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the string.

**Example**

```c
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "zy";
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( "xyz" );

    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb.Append( chars ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Text() << endl;
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb.Append( chars ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << endl;
    sb.Append( chars );   // append char * to StrBuf

    cout << "sb.Text() after sb.Append( chars ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Text() << endl;
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb.Append( chars ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << endl;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

- `sb.Text() prior to sb.Append( chars ) returns "xyz"
- `sb.Length() prior to sb.Append( chars ) returns 3`
- `sb.Text() after sb.Append( chars ) returns "xyzzy"
- `sb.Length() after sb.Append( chars ) returns 5`
**StrBuf::Append( const char *, int )**

Append a string of a specified length to a StrBuf. The string is logically appended to the string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Exactly len bytes are appended to the StrBuf from the string. The length of the StrBuf is incremented by the len argument.

If the memory for the StrBuf's buffer is not large enough, new memory to contiguously contain the results of appending the string of specified length is allocated. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the string.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "zyx";
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "xyz" );
    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb.Append( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb.Append( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
    sb.Append( chars, 2 );   // append len bytes of char * to StrBuf
    cout << "sb.Text() after sb.Append( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb.Append( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```
Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```plaintext
sb.Text() prior to sb.Append(chars, 2) returns "xyz"
sb.Length() prior to sb.Append(chars, 2) returns 3

sb.Text() after sb.Append(chars, 2) returns "xyzzy"
sb.Length() after sb.Append(chars, 2) returns 5
```
StrBuf::Append( const StrPtr * )

Append a StrPtr to a StrBuf. The argument is passed as a pointer to the StrPtr. The string pointed to by the StrPtr's buffer is logically appended to the string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer. Arguments are commonly addresses of instances of classes derived from the StrPtr class, such as StrRef and StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *s  pointer to the StrPtr instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Initialize the StrBuf and the StrPtr before calling Append().

Exactly the number of bytes specified by the length of the StrPtr are appended to the StrBuf from the StrPtr. The length of the StrBuf is incremented by the length of the StrPtr.

If the memory for the StrBuf's buffer is not large enough, new memory to contiguously contain the results of appending the StrPtr is allocated. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the StrPtr.
Example

#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "zy" );
    StrPtr *sp = &sr;
    StrBuf sba;
    StrBuf sbb;

    sba.Set( "xyz" );
    sbb.Set( "xyz" );

cout << "sba.Text() after sba.Set( \"xyz\" ) returns ";
cout << \"\" << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sba.Length() after sba.Set( \"xyz\" ) returns ";
cout << sba.Length() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Text() after sbb.Set( \"xyz\" ) returns ";
cout << sbb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Length() after sbb.Set( \"xyz\" ) returns ";
cout << sbb.Length() << "\n";

    sba.Append( sp );   // append StrPtr * to StrBuf

cout << "sba.Text() after sba.Append( sp ) returns ";
cout << \"\" << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sba.Length() after sba.Append( sp ) returns ";
cout << sba.Length() << "\n";

    sbb.Append( &sr );   // append &StrRef to StrBuf

cout << "sbb.Text() after sbb.Append( &sr ) returns ";
cout << \"\" << sbb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Length() after sbb.Append( &sr ) returns ";
cout << sbb.Length() << "\n";

    sba.Append( &sbb );   // append &StrBuf to StrBuf

cout << "sba.Text() after sba.Append( &sbb ) returns ";
cout << \"\" << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sba.Length() after sba.Append( &sbb ) returns ";
cout << sba.Length() << "\n";
}

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method Call</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Text()</code> after <code>sba.Set( &quot;xyz&quot; )</code></td>
<td>returns &quot;xyz&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Length()</code> after <code>sba.Set( &quot;xyz&quot; )</code></td>
<td>returns 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sbb.Text()</code> after <code>sbb.Set( &quot;xyz&quot; )</code></td>
<td>returns &quot;xyz&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sbb.Length()</code> after <code>sbb.Set( &quot;xyz&quot; )</code></td>
<td>returns 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Text()</code> after <code>sba.Append( sp )</code></td>
<td>returns &quot;xyzzy&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Length()</code> after <code>sba.Append( sp )</code></td>
<td>returns 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sbb.Text()</code> after <code>sbb.Append( &amp;sr )</code></td>
<td>returns &quot;xyzzy&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sbb.Length()</code> after <code>sbb.Append( &amp;sr )</code></td>
<td>returns 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Text()</code> after <code>sba.Append( &amp;sbb )</code></td>
<td>returns &quot;xyzzyxyzzy&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sba.Length()</code> after <code>sba.Append( &amp;sbb )</code></td>
<td>returns 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
StrBuf::Clear()

Clear the length member of a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Only the length member of the StrBuf is zeroed.

To set the buffer member to a zero-length string, call Terminate() after calling Clear().

See also

StrBuf::Terminate()

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
  StrBuf sb;
  sb.Set( "xyz" );
  cout << "Prior to sb.Clear() and sb.Terminate():\n";
  cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
  cout << "  sb.Text() returns "" << sb.Text() << "\n";
  sb.Clear(); // zero out the length
  cout << "After sb.Clear() but prior to sb.Terminate():\n";
  cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
  cout << "  sb.Text() returns "" << sb.Text() << "\n";
  sb.Terminate();
  cout << "After sb.Clear() and sb.Terminate():\n";
  cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
  cout << "  sb.Text() returns "" << sb.Text() << "\n";
}```
Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

Prior to `sb.Clear()` and `sb.Terminate()`:
- `sb.Length()` returns 3
- `sb.Text()` returns "xyz"

After `sb.Clear()` but prior to `sb.Terminate()`:
- `sb.Length()` returns 0
- `sb.Text()` returns "xyz"

After `sb.Clear()` and `sb.Terminate()`:
- `sb.Length()` returns 0
- `sb.Text()` returns ""

**StrBuf::StrBuf() (Constructor)**

Construct a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The StrBuf constructor initializes the StrBuf to contain a zero-length null buffer.

**Example**

```cpp
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;    // constructor called
    cout << "sb.Text() returns \"" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sb.Text() returns ""
sb.Length() returns 0
```
StrBuf::StrBuf( const StrBuf & ) (Copy Constructor)

Construct a copy of a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrBuf &amp;s (implied) reference of the StrBuf from which copying occurs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The StrBuf copy constructor creates a copy of a StrBuf. The StrBuf from which copying occurs must be initialized before calling the copy constructor.

The StrBuf copy constructor initializes the new StrBuf to contain a zero-length null buffer, and sets the contents of the new StrBuf using the contents of the original StrBuf. Any memory allocated for the buffer of the copy is separate from the memory for the buffer of the original StrBuf.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

void called( StrBuf csb )
{
    csb << "zy";
    cout << "called() csb.Text() returns " << csb.Text() << "\n";
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "xyz" );
    called( sb ); // copy constructor called
    cout << "main() sb.Text() returns " << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

called() csb.Text() returns "xyzzy"
main() sb.Text() returns "xyz"
StrBuf::~StrBuf() (Destructor)

Destroy a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The StrBuf destructor destroys a StrBuf.

If the buffer points to allocated memory other than nullStrBuf, the allocated memory is freed.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf *psb;
    psb = new StrBuf;
    psb->Set( "xyz" );
    cout << psb->Text() returns " << psb->Text() << "\n";
    delete psb;   // destructor called and allocated memory freed
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
psb->Text() returns "xyz"
```
**StrBuf::Extend( char )**

Extend a **StrBuf** by one byte. The string pointed to by the **StrBuf**'s buffer is logically extended.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrBuf</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

One byte is copied to the extended **StrBuf**. The length of the **StrBuf** is incremented by one.

**Extend()** does not null-terminate the extended string pointed to by the **StrBuf**'s buffer. To ensure that the extended string is null-terminated, call **Terminate()** after calling **Extend()**.

If the memory for the **StrBuf**'s buffer is not large enough, enough new memory is allocated to contiguously contain the extended string. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the byte.

**See also**

**StrBuf::Terminate()**
Example

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "xy" );
    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns ";
    cout << "\"" << sb.Text() << "\"\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
    sb.Extend( 'z' );  // extend StrBuf from char
    sb.Terminate();
    cout << "sb.Text() after sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns ";
    cout << "\"" << sb.Text() << "\"\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```

sb.Text() prior to sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns "xy"
sb.Length() prior to sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns 2

sb.Text() after sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns "xyz"
sb.Length() after sb.Extend( 'z' ) returns 3
```
StrBuf::Extend( const char *, int )

Extend a StrBuf by a string of a specified length. The string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer is logically extended.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf, int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pointer to the first byte of the string, length of the string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Exactly len bytes are copied from the string to the extended StrBuf. The length of the StrBuf is incremented by len bytes.

Extend() does not null-terminate the extended string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer. To ensure that the extended string is null-terminated, call Terminate() after calling Extend().

If the memory for the StrBuf's buffer is not large enough, enough new memory is allocated to contiguously contain the extended string. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the string.

See also

StrBuf::Terminate()
Example

```c
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "zyx";
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( "xyz" );

    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";

    sb.Extend( chars, 2 );   // extend StrBuf from len bytes of char *
    sb.Terminate();

    cout << "sb.Text() after sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sb.Text() prior to sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns "xyz"
sb.Length() prior to sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns 3
sb.Text() after sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns "xyzzy"
sb.Length() after sb.Extend( chars, 2 ) returns 5
```
**StrBuf::operator =( const char * )**

Assign a StrBuf from a null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf (implied) pointer to the first byte of the null-terminated string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

Initialize the StrBuf before the assignment.

The length is set to the number of bytes prior to the first null byte in the string.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf's buffer is separate from the memory for the string.

### Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyz";
    StrBuf sb;

    sb = chars; // assign StrBuf from char *

    cout << "chars[] = \"" << chars << "\\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns \"" << sb.Text() << "\\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[] = "xyz"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
**StrBuf::operator =( const StrBuf & )**

Assign a StrBuf from another StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrBuf &amp;buf (implied) reference of the StrBuf from which assignment occurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize both StrBufs before the assignment.

Any memory allocated for the assigned StrBuf's buffer is separate from the memory for the StrBuf's buffer from which assignment occurs.

Do not assign a StrBuf to itself.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sba;
    StrBuf sbb;
    sba.Set( "xyz" );
    sbb = sba;  // assign StrBuf to StrBuf
    cout << "sba.Text() returns \"" << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Text() returns \"" << sbb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sba.Text() returns "xyz"
sbb.Text() returns "xyz"
```
StrBuf::operator =( const StrPtr & )

Assign a StrBuf from a StrPtr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s  (implied) reference of the StrPtr instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf and the StrPtr before assignment.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf’s buffer is separate from the memory for the StrPtr’s buffer.

**Example**

```c
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "xyz" );
    StrPtr *sp = &sr;
    StrBuf sb;

    sb = *sp;  // assign StrBuf from StrPtr

    cout << sp->Text() returns " << sp->Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns " << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sp->Text() returns "xyz"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
```
**StrBuf::operator =( const StrRef & )**

Assign a StrBuf from a StrRef.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrRef &amp;s (implied) reference of the StrRef instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf and StrRef before assignment.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf's buffer is separate from that of the StrRef's buffer.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "xyz" );
    StrBuf sb;

    sb = sr;   // assign StrBuf from StrRef

    cout << "sr.Text() returns \"" << sr.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns \"" << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
```
**StrBuf::operator <<( const char * )**

Append a null-terminated string to a **StrBuf**. The string is logically appended to the string pointed to by the **StrBuf**’s buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class</strong></td>
<td><strong>StrBuf</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Arguments** | **const char** *s*  
(implied) pointer to the first byte of the null-terminated string |
| **Returns** | **StrBuf** &  
reference of the **StrBuf** |

**Notes**

The **StrBuf**’s length is incremented by the number of bytes prior to the first null byte in the string.

If the memory for the **StrBuf**’s buffer is not large enough, new contiguous memory is allocated to contain the results of appending the null-terminated string. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the string.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "zy";
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( "xyz" );
    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb << chars returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb << chars returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";

    sb << chars;  // append char * to StrBuf
    cout << "sb.Text() after sb << chars returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb << chars returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:
sb.Text() prior to sb << chars returns "xyz"
sb.Length() prior to sb << chars returns 3

sb.Text() after sb << chars returns "xyzzy"
sb.Length() after sb << chars returns 5
**StrBuf::operator <<( int )**

Append a formatted integer to a StrBuf. The formatted integer is logically appended to the string pointed to by the StrBuf’s buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(implied) integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reference of the StrBuf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The integer is formatted with the logical equivalent of `sprintf( buf, "%d", v )`.

The length is incremented by the number of bytes of the formatted integer.

If the memory for the StrBuf’s buffer is not large enough, new contiguous memory is allocated to contain the results of appending the formatted integer. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the formatted integer.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    int i;

    sb.Set( "xyz" );
    i = 73;

    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb << i returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb << i returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";

    sb << i;  // append (formatted) int to StrBuf

    cout << "sb.Text() after sb << i returns ";
    cout << "\n" << sb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb << i returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << "\n";
}
```
Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

- `sb.Text() prior to sb << i` returns "xyz"
- `sb.Length() prior to sb << i` returns 3
- `sb.Text() after sb << i` returns "xyz73"
- `sb.Length() after sb << i` returns 5
StrBuf::operator <<( const StrPtr * )

Append a StrPtr to a StrBuf. The string pointed to by the StrPtr's buffer is logically appended to the string pointed to by the StrBuf's buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Exactly the number of bytes specified by the StrPtr's length are appended to the StrBuf. The StrBuf's length is incremented by the StrPtr's length.

If the memory for the StrBuf's buffer is not large enough, new contiguous memory is allocated to contain the results of appending the StrPtr. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the StrPtr.

Example

```c
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "zy" );
    StrPtr *sp = &sr;
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( "xyz" );
    cout << "sb.Text() prior to sb << sp returns ";
    cout << endl << sb.Text() << endl;
    cout << "sb.Length() prior to sb << sp returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << endl;
    sb << sp;   // append StrPtr * to StrBuf
    cout << "sb.Text() after sb << sp returns ";
    cout << endl << sb.Text() << endl;
    cout << "sb.Length() after sb << sp returns ";
    cout << sb.Length() << endl;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:
sb.Text() prior to sb << sp returns "xyz"
sb.Length() prior to sb << sp returns 3

sb.Text() after sb << sp returns "xyzzy"
sb.Length() after sb << sp returns 5
**StrBuf::operator << ( const StrPtr & )**

Append a `StrPtr` to a `StrBuf`. The argument is passed as a reference of the `StrPtr`. The string pointed to by the `StrPtr`'s `buffer` is logically appended to the string pointed to by the `StrBuf`'s `buffer`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>StrBuf</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const StrPtr &amp;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>StrBuf &amp;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Arguments are typically instances of classes derived from the `StrPtr` class, such as `StrRef` and `StrBuf`.

Exactly the number of bytes specified by the `length` of the `StrPtr` are appended to the `StrBuf` from the `StrPtr`. The `length` of the `StrBuf` is incremented by the `length` of the `StrPtr`.

If the memory for the `StrBuf`'s `buffer` is not large enough, new contiguous memory is allocated to contain the results of appending the `StrPtr`. If new memory is allocated, the old memory is freed. Any memory allocated is separate from the memory for the `StrPtr`.
Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdbuf.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "zy" );
    StrPtr *sp = &sr;
    StrBuf sba;
    StrBuf sbb;

    sba.Set( "xyzzy" );
    sbb.Set( "xyz" );

    cout << "sba.Text() after sba.Set( "xyzzy" ) returns ";
    cout << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sba.Length() after sba.Set( "xyzzy" ) returns ";
    cout << sba.Length() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Text() after sbb.Set( "xyz" ) returns ";
    cout << sbb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Length() after sbb.Set( "xyz" ) returns ";
    cout << sbb.Length() << "\n";

    sbb << sr;  // append StrRef to StrBuf
    cout << "sbb.Text() after sbb << sr returns ";
    cout << sbb.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbb.Length() after sbb << sr returns ";
    cout << sbb.Length() << "\n";

    sba << sbb;  // append StrBuf to StrBuf
    cout << "sba.Text() after sba << sbb returns ";
    cout << sba.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sba.Length() after sba << sbb returns ";
    cout << sba.Length() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sba.Text() after sba.Set( "xyzzy" ) returns "xyzzy"
sba.Length() after sba.Set( "xyzzy" ) returns 5
sbb.Text() after sbb.Set( "xyz" ) returns "xyz"
sbb.Length() after sbb.Set( "xyz" ) returns 3
sbb.Text() after sbb << sr returns "xyzzy"
sbb.Length() after sbb << sr returns 5
sba.Text() after sba << sbb returns "xyzzyxyzzy"
sba.Length() after sba << sbb returns 10
```
**StrBuf::Set( const char * )**

Set a StrBuf from a null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf pointer to the first byte of the null-terminated string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf before calling `Set()`.

The length of the StrBuf is set to the number of bytes prior to the first null byte in the string.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf’s buffer is separate from the memory for the string.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "string";
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( chars );   // set StrBuf from char *
    cout << "chars[] = \
    " << chars << \\
    "\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns \
    " << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[] = "string"
sb.Text() returns "string"
**StrBuf::Set(const char *, int)**

Set a StrBuf from a string of a specified length.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf before calling `Set()`.

Exactly `len` bytes are copied from the string to the StrBuf. The length of the StrBuf is set to the `len` argument.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf’s buffer is separate from the memory for the string.

**Example**

```
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyzzy";
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( chars, 3 ); // set StrBuf from len bytes of char *
    cout << "chars[] = \"" << chars << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns \"" << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
chars[] = "xyzzy"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
```
**StrBuf::Set( const StrPtr * )**

Set a StrBuf from a pointer to a StrPtr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pointer to the StrPtr instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf and the StrPtr before calling `Set()`.

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf’s buffer is separate from the memory for the StrPtr’s buffer.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr( "xyz" );
    StrPtr *sp = &sr;
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( sp );  // set StrBuf from StrPtr *

    cout << sp->Text() returns " << sp->Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sb.Text() returns " << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
sp->Text() returns "xyz"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
```
StrBuf::Set( const StrPtr & )

Set a StrBuf from a reference of a StrPtr. Arguments are commonly instances of classes derived from the StrPtr class, such as StrRef and StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s reference of the StrPtr instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Initialize the StrBuf and the StrPtr before calling Set().

Any memory allocated for the StrBuf's buffer is separate from the memory for the StrPtr's buffer.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr;
    StrBuf sbs;
    StrBuf sbt;

    sr.Set( "xyz" );
    sbt.Set( sr ); // set StrBuf from StrRef
    cout << "sr.Text() returns " << sr.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbt.Text() returns " << sbt.Text() << "\n";

    sbs.Set( "abc" );
    sbt.Set( sbs ); // set StrBuf from StrBuf
    cout << "sbs.Text() returns " << sbs.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sbt.Text() returns " << sbt.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
sbt.Text() returns "xyz"

sbs.Text() returns "abc"
sbt.Text() returns "abc"
StrBuf::StringInit()

Initialize a StrBuf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

*StringInit()* initializes the StrBuf to contain a zero-length null buffer.

Normally when a StrBuf is created, it is initialized using the StrBuf constructor. However, there may be specialized cases where memory has already been allocated for a StrBuf instance, but the memory was not allocated through the normal mechanisms that would result in the StrBuf constructor initializing the instance. For these specialized cases, *StringInit()* is appropriate for initializing a StrBuf instance.

After a StrBuf has been used, calling *StringInit()* for the instance can result in a memory leak. Specifically, once the buffer member has been pointed to memory other than nullStrBuf, calling *StringInit()* for the instance will abandon the memory.

In most cases, it is preferable to use an alternative such as one of the following:

```c++
    sb1 = StrRef::Null();
    sb2.Clear();
    sb2.Terminate();
    sb3.Set( "" );
    sb4 = ";
```

See also

StrBuf::Clear() StrBuf::Set() StrBuf::Terminate() StrBuf::operator =( char * ) StrRef::Null()
Example

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <errno.h>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

#define NSTRBUFS  5
#define CHUNKSIZE 1024
#define STRBUFSIZE sizeof( StrBuf )

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chunk[ CHUNKSIZE ];
    int chunkFree = CHUNKSIZE;
    char *pchunkStart = &chunk[ 0 ];
    char *pchunk;
    int iStrBuf;

    // Initialize the StrBufs in the chunk.
    for ( iStrBuf = 0, pchunk = pchunkStart;
          iStrBuf < NSTRBUFS;
          iStrBuf, pchunk += STRBUFSIZE )
    {
        // Ensure that there's enough free left in the chunk for a StrBuf.
        if ( (chunkFree -= STRBUFSIZE) < 0 )
        {
            cout << "Not enough free left in the chunk!\n";
            return ENOMEM;
        }

        // Initialize and set the value of the StrBuf.
        ((StrBuf *)pchunk)->StringInit();
        *(StrBuf *)pchunk += iStrBuf + 73;
    }

    // Print the StrBufs. Do this in a separate loop so as to provide
    // some evidence that the above loop didn't corrupt adjacent StrBufs.
    for ( iStrBuf = 0, pchunk = pchunkStart;
          iStrBuf < NSTRBUFS;
          iStrBuf, pchunk += STRBUFSIZE )
    {
        cout << "StrBuf " << iStrBuf + 1 << " contains ";
        cout << ((StrBuf *)pchunk)->Text() << "\n";
    }
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:
StrBuf 1 contains "73"
StrBuf 2 contains "74"
StrBuf 3 contains "75"
StrBuf 4 contains "76"
StrBuf 5 contains "77"
**StrBuf::Terminate()**

Null-terminate the string pointed to by the buffer member of a StrBuf. The null byte is placed in the buffer at the location indicated by the length member.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrBuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

Initialize the StrBuf before calling `Terminate()`.

The length member of the StrBuf is effectively unchanged by `Terminate()`.

**Example**

`Terminate()` is defined in `strbuf.h` as follows:

```c
void Terminate()
{
    Extend( 0 ); --length;
}
```

`Terminate()` null-terminates the string by calling `Extend( 0 )`, which also increments the length member; the length is then decremented within `Terminate()`, leaving it unchanged.

**See also**

`StrBuf::StringInit()`
Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;

    sb.Set( "xyzzy" );
    cout << "Prior to sb.SetLength( 3 ) and sb.Terminate():\n";
    cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
    cout << "  sb.Text() returns " "xyzzy" " << sb.Text() << "\n";

    sb.SetLength( 3 );
    cout << "After sb.SetLength( 3 ) but prior to sb.Terminate():\n";
    cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
    cout << "  sb.Text() returns " "xyzzy" " << sb.Text() << "\n";
    sb.Terminate(); // null-terminate the string at length

    cout << "After sb.SetLength( 3 ) and sb.Terminate():\n";
    cout << "  sb.Length() returns " << sb.Length() << "\n";
    cout << "  sb.Text() returns " "xyz" " << sb.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

Prior to sb.SetLength( 3 ) and sb.Terminate():
  sb.Length() returns 5
  sb.Text() returns "xyzzy"

After sb.SetLength( 3 ) but prior to sb.Terminate():
  sb.Length() returns 3
  sb.Text() returns "xyzzy"

After sb.SetLength( 3 ) and sb.Terminate():
  sb.Length() returns 3
  sb.Text() returns "xyz"
StrDict methods

\textbf{StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )}

Return the value of the specified variable, or \texttt{NULL} if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>\textit{StrDict}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>\texttt{const StrPtr &amp;\texttt{var}} \hspace{1em} the name of the variable to look up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>\texttt{StrPtr *} \hspace{1em} the value, or \texttt{NULL} if not defined</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{Notes}

For the most part, all of the following methods are equivalent:

- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )}
- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( const char * )}
- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( const char *, Error * )}
- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int )}
- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int, int )}
- \texttt{StrDict::GetVar( int, StrPtr &, StrPtr & )}

The \texttt{var} argument must specify the name of a variable in the \texttt{StrDict} that you’re trying to look up. In some instances, variables in a \texttt{StrDict} are named according to the convention \texttt{FOO\_x} or \texttt{FOO\_x, y} - one example is the tagged output of \texttt{p4 filelog}. Calling \texttt{GetVar()} with these numbers as arguments saves you the work of manually constructing the variable name by using \texttt{itoa()} and \texttt{Append()}.

The version of \texttt{GetVar()} that returns an \texttt{int} is useful for iterating through a \texttt{StrDict}; the \texttt{int} argument is an index into the \texttt{StrDict}, and the two \texttt{StrPtr} arguments are set to contain the variable and value found at that index, if any. This method returns zero if there was no variable at the specified index.

\textbf{Example}

The implementation of \texttt{ClientUser::OutputStat()} in \texttt{clientuser.cc} provides a good source example:
void ClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict *varList )
{
    int i;
    StrBuf msg;
    StrRef var, val;

    // Dump out the variables, using the GetVar( x ) interface.
    // Don't display the function, which is only relevant to rpc.
    for ( i = 0; varList->GetVar( i, var, val ); i++ )
    {
        if ( var == "func" ) continue;

        // otherAction and otherOpen go at level 2, as per 99.1 + earlier
        msg.Clear();
        msg << var << " " << val;
        char level = strncmp( var.Text(), "other", 5 ) ? '1' : '2';
        OutputInfo( level, msg.Text() );
    }

    // blank line
    OutputInfo( '0', "" );
}

An example of output:

% p4 -Ztag filelog file.c

... depotFile //depot/depot/source/file.c
... rev0 3
... change0 1949
... action0 integrate
... type0 text
... time0 1017363022
... user0 testuser
... client0 testuser-luey
... desc0 <enter description here>
... how0,0 ignored
... file0,0 //depot/depot/source/old.c
... srev0,0 #1
... erev0,0 #2
... how0,1 ignored
...
**StrDict::GetVar( const char * )**

Return the value of the specified variable, or **NULL** if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrDict</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| const char *var  
           | the name of the variable to look up |
| Returns  | StrPtr *  
           | the value, or **NULL** if not defined |

**Notes**

For the most part, all of the `GetVar()` methods are equivalent.

For details, see `StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )`
StrDict::GetVar( const char *, Error * )

Return the value of the specified variable, or NULL if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const char *var</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the name of the variable to look up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error *e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an error message indicating that the required parameter var was not set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the value, or NULL if not defined</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

For the most part, all of the GetVar() methods are equivalent.

For details, see StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )
StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int )

Return the value of the specified variable, or NULL if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;var the name of the variable to look up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int x appended to the variable’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr * the value, or NULL if not defined</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

For the most part, all of the GetVar() methods are equivalent.

For details, see StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )
**StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr &, int, int )**

Return the value of the specified variable, or **NULL** if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrDict</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><strong>const StrPtr &amp;var</strong> the name of the variable to look up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>int x</strong> appended to the variable’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>int y</strong> appended to the variable’s name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>**StrPtr ** the value, or <strong>NULL</strong> if not defined</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

For the most part, all of the **GetVar()** methods are equivalent.

For details, see **StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )**
StrDict::GetVar( int, StrPtr &, StrPtr & )

Return the value of the specified variable, or "NULL" if not defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;var</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;val</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This method is typically used when iterating through a StrDict.

For the most part, all of the GetVar() methods are equivalent.

For details, see StrDict::GetVar( const StrPtr & )
StrDict::Load( FILE * )

Unmarshals the StrDict from a file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FILE *i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the file to load from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>always equals 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Load() loads a StrDict from a file previously created by Save().

Example

The following example "loads" a StrDict by reading it from stdin.

```c
MyStrDict sd;
ClientUser ui;

sd.Load( stdin );
ui.OutputStat( &sd );
```

Given a marshaled StrDict on stdin, the code produces the following output:

```bash
> cat marshaled.strdict
depotFile=/depot/file.c
clientFile=c:\test\depot\file.c
headAction=edit
headType=text
headTime=1020067607
headRev=4
headChange=2042
headModTime 1020067484
func=client-FstatInfo

> a.out < marshaled.strdict
... depotFile //depot/file.c
... clientFile clientFile=c:\test\depot\file.c
... headAction edit
... headType text
... headTime 1020067607
... headRev 4
... headChange 2042
... headModTime 1020067484
```
StrDict::Save( FILE * )

Marshals the StrDict into a text file.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>FILE *out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Save() stores the StrDict in a marshaled form to a text file, which can be recovered by using Load().

Example

The following example "saves" a StrDict by writing it to stdout.

```c
void MyClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict *varList )
{
    varList->Save( stdout );
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```bash
> a.out fstat //depot/file.c

depotFile=//depot/file.c
clientFile=c:\test\depot\file.c
headAction=edit
headType=text
headTime=1020067607
headRev=4
headChange=2042
headModTime=1020067484
func=client-FstatInfo
```
**StrDict::SetArgv( int, char *const * )**

Set a list of values, such as the arguments to a Perforce command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrDict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int argc the number of variables (arguments)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *const *argv the variables (arguments) themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*SetArgv()* is typically used when setting command arguments in `ClientApi`.

**Example**

`p4api.cc` provides an example of using `SetArgv()` to set arguments.

```c
int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    ClientUser ui;
    ClientApi client;
    Error e;

    // Any special protocol mods
    // client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" );

    // Connect to server
    client.Init( &e );

    // Run the command "argv[1] argv[2...]"
    client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
    client.Run( argv[1], &ui );

    // Close connection
    client.Final( &e );

    return 0;
}
```
StrNum methods

StrNum::StrNum( int ) (constructor)

Create a StrNum, either unset or with a value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrNum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrNum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

A StrNum always stores numbers using base ten.

To create a StrNum without a value, call StrNum() without an argument.

Example

The following example creates a StrNum and displays it:

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrNum sn = StrNum( 1666 );
    cout << "sn.Text() returns " << sn.Text() << ":" << endl;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

sn.Text() returns "1666"
StrNum::Set( int )

Set a StrNum's value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrNum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int v the number to store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

A StrNum always stores numbers using base ten.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrNum sn;
    sn.Set( 1666 );
    cout << "sn.Text() returns " << sn.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

sn.Text() returns "1666"
StrOps methods

**StrOps::Caps( StrBuf & )**

Convert the first character in a string (in place) to uppercase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrOps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;o  the string to capitalize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <strops.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "xyzzy" );
    printf( "Before: %s\n", sb.Text() );
    StrOps::Caps( sb );
    printf( "After: %s\n", sb.Text() );

    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

*Before: xyzzy*
*After: Xyzzy*
StrOps::Dump( const StrPtr & )

Pretty-print a string to stdout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;o the string to dump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Unprintable characters are displayed as hexadecimal ASCII values, surrounded by greater-than/less-than characters.

Example

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <strops.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "\tXyzzy" );
    StrOps::Dump( sb );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```c
<09>Xyzzy
```
StrOps::Expand( StrBuf &, StrPtr &, StrDict & )

Expand ""%var%" strings into corresponding "`val" strings from a StrDict.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arguments| StrBuf &o the output string  
StrPtr &s the input string  
StrDict &d the var/value pairs to look up |
| Returns  | void |

Notes

This function provides a way to quickly expand variables from a StrDict into a StrBuf.

Example

This small program demonstrates the Expand() method in an OutputStat() implementation:

```c
void MyClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict *varList )
{
    StrBuf s = StrBuf();
    s.Set( "File: %depotFile%  Rev: %rev%" );
    StrBuf o = StrBuf();
    StrOps::Expand( o, s, *varList );
    StrOps::Dump( o );
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    ClientApi client;
    MyClientUser ui;
    Error e;
    
    client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" );
    client.Init( &e );
    client.SetArgv( 1, ++argv );
    client.Run( "files", &ui );
    return client.Final( &e );
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
% a.out *
File: //depot/src/file1.c  Rev: 4
File: //depot/src/file2.c  Rev: 2
```
StrOps::Expand2( StrBuf &, StrPtr &, StrDict & )

Expand “[%var% \alt\]” strings into corresponding “val” strings from a StrDict, or “alt” if “var” is undefined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;o the output string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;s the input string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrDict &amp;d the var/value pairs to look up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

Like Expand(), this function provides a way to quickly expand variables from a StrDict into a StrBuf, with the additional feature of providing alternate text if the value is not defined.

The exact syntax of the expression to be expanded is:

\[ text1 %var% text2 | alt \]

If variable “var” has value "val" in the StrDict d, the expression expands to:

text1 val text2

otherwise, it expands to:

alt

See the example for details.

Example

This small program demonstrates the Expand2() method in an OutputStat() implementation:
void MyClientUser::OutputStat( StrDict *varList )
{
    StrBuf s = StrBuf();
    s.Set( "stat: [File: %depotFile%|No file]!" );

    StrBuf o = StrBuf();
    StrOps::Expand2( o, s, *varList );

    StrOps::Dump( o );
}

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    ClientApi client;
    MyClientUser ui;
    Error e;

    client.SetProtocol( "tag", "" );
    client.Init( &e );

    client.SetArgv( argc - 2, argv + 2 );
    client.Run( argv[1], &ui );

    return client.Final( &e );
}

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

% a.out files *
stat: File: //depot/src/file1.c!
stat: File: //depot/src/file2.c!

% a.out labels
stat: No file!
stat: No file!
stat: No file!
stat: No file!
stat: No file!
StrOps::Indent( StrBuf &, const StrPtr &)

Make a copy of a string, with each line indented.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp; o, StrPtr &amp; s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This function reads the input string s and copies it to the output string o, with each line indented with a single tab.

Example

```cpp
StrBuf s = StrBuf();
s.Set( "abc\ndef\nghi\n" );

StrBuf o = StrBuf();
StrOps::Indent( o, s );

printf( "Before:\n%s", s.Text() );
printf( "After:\n%s", o.Text() );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
Before:
abc
def
ghi
After:
abc
def
ghi
```
StrOps::Lines( StrBuf &, char *[], int )

Break a string apart at line breaks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;o the input string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *vec[] the output array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int maxVec the maximum number of lines to handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int the actual number of lines handled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This function handles all types of line breaks: "\r", "\n", and "\r\n".

Example

```c
StrBuf o = StrBuf();
o.Set( "abc\ndef\nghi\n" );

printf( "Input StrBuf:\n%s\n", o.Text() );

char *vec[4];
int l = StrOps::Lines( o, vec, 4 );

for ( ; l ; l-- )
{
    printf( "Line %d: %s\n", l, vec[l-1] );
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
Input StrBuf:
abc
def
ghi

Line 3: abc
Line 2: def
Line 1: ghi
```
StrOps::Lower( StrBuf & )

Convert each character in a string (in place) to lowercase

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;o the string to convert to lowercase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This function modifies an original string in place by converting all uppercase characters to lowercase.

Example

```cpp
StrBuf o = StrBuf();
o.Set( "xYzZy" );

printf( "Before: %s\n", o );
StrOps::Lower( o );
printf( "After: %s\n", o );

return 0;
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```bash
% a.out
Before: xYzZy
After: xyzzy
```
StrOps::OtoX( const unsigned char *, int, StrBuf & )

Convert an octet stream into hex.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *octet the input stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len length of the input in bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;x the output string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function converts the input stream into a string of hexadecimal numbers, with each byte from the input being represented as exactly two hex digits.

**Example**

```c
const unsigned char stream[3] = { 'f', 'o', 'o' };
StrBuf hex;
StrOps::OtoX( stream, 3, hex );
StrOps::Dump( hex );
return 0;
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
% a.out
666F6F
```
**StrOps::Replace( StrBuf &, const StrPtr &, const StrPtr &, const StrPtr & )**

Replace substrings in a `StrPtr` and store the result to a `StrBuf`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrOps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>StrBuf &amp;o</code> the output string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>StrPtr &amp;i</code> the input string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>StrBuf &amp;s</code> the substring to match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>StrPtr &amp;r</code> the substring to replace <code>s</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function reads the input string `i` and copies it to the output string `o`, after replacing each occurrence of the string `s` with string `r`.

**Example**

```c++
StrBuf i = StrBuf();
i.Set( "PerForce is PerForce, of course, of course!" );

StrBuf wrong, right;
wrong.Set( "PerForce" );
right.Set( "Perforce" );

StrBuf o = StrBuf();
StrOps::Replace( o, i, wrong, right );
StrOps::Dump( o );
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
% a.out
Perforce is Perforce, of course, of course!
```
StrOps::Sub( StrPtr &, char, char )

Substitute instances of one character for another.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;string the string on which to operate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>target the target character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>replace the character with which to replace target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This function substitutes the replace character for every instance of the target character in the input string. The substitution is performed in place.

Example

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>
#include <strops.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( "\tPassword" );
    StrOps::Sub( sb, 'o', '0' );
    StrOps::Sub( sb, 'a', '4' );
    StrOps::Dump( sb );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
P4ssw0rd
```
**StrOps::Upper( StrBuf & )**

Convert each character in a string (in place) to uppercase

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;o the string to convert to uppercase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function modifies an original string in place by converting all lowercase characters to uppercase.

**Example**

```c
StrBuf o = StrBuf();
o.Set( "xYzZy" );

printf( "Before: %s\n", o );
StrOps::Upper( o );
printf( "After:  %s\n", o );

return 0;
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
% a.out
Before: xYzZy
After:  XYZZY
```
StrOps::Words( StrBuf &, const char *[], char *[], int )

Break a string apart at whitespace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrOps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrBuf &amp;tmp a temporary string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>const char *buf the input string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *vec[] the output array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int maxVec the maximum number of words to handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int the actual number of words handled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This function uses the isAspace() function to define whitespace.

Example

```c
StrBuf o = StrBuf();
StrBuf tmp = StrBuf();
o.Set( "abc\tdef ghi\nxxyz xyzzy plugh" );

printf( "Input StrBuf:\n%s\n", o.Text() );

char *vec[5];
int w = StrOps::Words( tmp, o, vec, 5 );

for ( ; w ; w-- )
{   printf( "Word %d: %s\n", w, vec[w-1] );
}

return 0;
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

Input StrBuf:
abc def ghi
xyz xxyzzy plugh

Word 5: xyzzy
Word 4: xyz
Word 3: ghi
Word 2: def
Word 1: abc
**StrOps::XtoO( char *, unsigned char *, int )**

Convert a hex string into an octet stream.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrOps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>char *octet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int octlen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This function converts the input hexadecimal string into the stream of bytes that it represents.

**Example**

```c
char *hex = "666F6F";
unsigned char oct[4];

StrOps::XtoO( hex, oct, 3 );
oct[3] = '\0';

printf( "%s", oct );

return 0;
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
% a.out
foo
```
StrPtr methods

StrPtr::Atoi()

Return the numeric value, if any, represented by this StrPtr's buffer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int   integer value of the string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

StrPtr::Atoi() is equivalent to calling atoi(StrPtr::Text()). Non-numeric strings typically return a value of zero.

Example

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    StrBuf str2;

    str1.Set( "123" );
    str2.Set( "234" );

    printf( "%s + %s = %d\n",
            str1.Text(), str2.Text(), str1.Atoi() + str2.Atoi() );
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
123 + 234 = 357
```


**StrPtr::CCompare( const StrPtr & )**

Case insensitive comparison of two StrPtrs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s the StrPtr to compare this one with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int zero if identical, nonzero if different</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

StrPtr::CCompare() is a wrapper for stricmp() or strcasecmp(). Its return value, if nonzero, indicates which of the two strings is "greater" in the ASCII sense.

**See also**

StrPtr::XCompare() StrPtr::Compare()

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1, str2, str3;

    str1.Set( "abc" );
    str2.Set( "Abc" );
    str3.Set( "xyz" );

    if ( str1.CCompare( str2 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );

    if ( str1.CCompare( str3 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );

    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
abc == Abc
abc != xyz
```
**StrPtr::Compare( const StrPtr &)**

Comparison of two StrPtrs, with case sensitivity based on client platform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s \ the StrPtr to compare this one with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int \ zero if identical, nonzero if different</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

StrPtr::Compare() is a wrapper for zstrcmp(). Its return value, if nonzero, indicates which of the two strings is “greater” in the ASCII sense.

**See also**

StrPtr::CCompare() StrPtr::XCompare().

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1, str2, str3;
    str1.Set( "abc" );
    str2.Set( "Abc" );
    str3.Set( "xyz" );

    if ( str1.Compare( str2 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );

    if ( str1.Compare( str3 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );

    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output on Windows:

```
abc == Abc
abc != xyz
```
and on Unix

```
abc != Abc
abc != xyz
```
**StrPtr::Contains( const StrPtr & )**

Look for a substring and, if found, return it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s the substring to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>char * the start of the substring if found, otherwise NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`StrPtr::Contains()` returns a pointer to the `StrPtr`'s buffer, rather than allocating a new buffer for the substring. If it cannot find the substring, `Contains()` returns `NULL`.

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1, str2;
    str1.Set( "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" );
    str2.Set( "brown fox" );
    printf( "%s\n", str1.Contains( str2 ) );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
brown fox jumps over the lazy dog
```
**StrPtr::Length()**

Return the length of this *StrPtr*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><em>StrPtr</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Returns  | int | the length of this *StrPtr*

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "This string" );
    printf( "%s is %d bytes long\n", str1, str1.Length() );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
This string is 11 bytes long
```
StrPtr::operator []( int )

Return the character at the specified index.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the index to look in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the character at that index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

This operator does no bounds checking, and can therefore return data from beyond the end of the string.

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" );
    printf( "%c%c%c%c\n", str1[1], str1[2], str1[35], str1[35], str1[12] );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
hello
```
**StrPtr::operators ==, !=, >, <, <=, >= ( const char * )**

Case-sensitive comparison operators between `StrPtr` and `char *`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><code>StrPtr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td><code>const char *buf</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the string to compare with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><code>int</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero if the comparison is false, nonzero if true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

These operators are typically used in simple comparisons between `StrPtrs`, such as to see whether two `StrPtrs` contain the same string, or whether one is greater than the other, ASCII-wise. The comparison is always case-sensitive.

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "This string" );
    printf( "%s", str1.Text() );
    if ( str1 == "that string" ) printf( " == " );
    if ( str1 > "that string" ) printf( " > " );
    if ( str1 < "that string" ) printf( " < " );
    printf( "that string" );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
This string < that string
```

(Note that “t” > “T” in ASCII.)
**StrPtr::operators ==, !=, >, <, <=, >= ( const StrPtr & )**

Case-sensitive comparison operators between StrPtr and StrPtr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; buf the string to compare with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int zero if the comparison is false, nonzero if true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

These operators are typically used in simple comparisons between StrPtrs, such as to see whether two StrPtrs contain the same string, or whether one is greater than the other, ASCII-wise. The comparison is always case-sensitive.

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
  StrBuf str1, str2;
  
  str1.Set( "This string" );
  str2.Set( "that string" );
  
  printf( "%s", str1.Text());
  if ( str1 == str2 ) printf( " == ");
  if ( str1 > str2 )  printf( " > ");
  if ( str1 < str2 )  printf( " < ");
  printf( "%s\n", str2.Text() );
  return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

This string < that string

(Note that “t” > “T” in ASCII.)
StrPtr::Text()

Return the char * containing this StrPtr's text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>char *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

StrPtr::Text() and StrPtr::Value() are exactly equivalent. Their most typical use is converting a StrPtr to a char * for functions outside of the client API to use.

Example

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" );
    printf( "%s\n", str1.Text() );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog
```
**StrPtr::Value()**

Return the char * containing this StrPtr's text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>char * This StrPtr's buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

StrPtr::Value() is the deprecated form of StrPtr::Text(). The two functions are equivalent. Their most typical use is converting a StrPtr to a char * for functions outside of the client API to use.

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" );
    printf( "%s\n", str1.Value() );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog
```
**StrPtr::XCompare( const StrPtr & )**

Case sensitive comparison of two StrPtrs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s the StrPtr to compare this one with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>int zero if identical, nonzero if different</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*StrPtr::XCompare()* is a wrapper for *strcmp()*. Its return value, if nonzero, indicates which of the two strings is "greater" in the ASCII sense.

**See also**

*StrPtr::CCompare() StrPtr::Compare()*

**Example**

```c
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1, str2, str3;

    str1.Set( "abc" );
    str2.Set( "Abc" );
    str3.Set( "xyz" );

    if ( str1.XCompare( str2 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str2.Text() );

    if ( str1.XCompare( str3 ) == 0 )
        printf( "%s == %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );
    else
        printf( "%s != %s\n", str1.Text(), str3.Text() );

    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
abc != Abc
abc != xyz
```
StrRef methods

StrRef::StrRef() (constructor)

Construct a StrRef, and leave it unset.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If arguments are provided, the constructor calls `set()` with them.
StrRef::StrRef( const StrPtr & ) (constructor)

Construct a StrRef, referencing an existing string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp; a StrPtr to reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If arguments are provided, the constructor calls set() with them.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "abc" );
    StrRef sr = StrRef( str1 );
    cout << "str1 = \\
         " << str1.Text() << "\\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns \n  " << sr.Text() << "\\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
str1 = "abc"
sr.Text() returns "abc"
```
**StrRef::StrRef( const char * ) (constructor)**

Construct a *StrRef*, referencing an existing string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><em>StrRef</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td><em>StrRef</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

If arguments are provided, the constructor calls *set()* with them.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "abc";
    StrRef sr = StrRef( chars );

    cout << "chars[] = " << chars << "\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns " << sr.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[] = "abc"
sr.Text() returns "abc"
StrRef::StrRef( const char * , int ) (constructor)

Construct a StrRef, referencing an existing string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

If arguments are provided, the constructor calls set() with them.

StrRef::Set() does not copy the target string; it simply creates a pointer to it. Be sure that the StrRef pointing to the target string does not outlive the target string.

Example

```c
#include <iostream>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[ ] = "xyzzy";
    StrRef sr = StrRef( chars, 3 );
    StrBuf sb;
    sb.Set( sr );

    printf( "chars[ ] = \n", chars );
    printf( "sr.Text() returns \n", sr.Text() );
    printf( "sb.Text() returns \n", sb.Text() );

    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[ ] = "xyzzy"
sr.Text() returns "xyzzy"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
**StrRef::Null()**

Return a null StrPtr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>StrPtr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*StrRef::Null()* is a static function.

**Example**

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "abc" );
    StrRef sr = StrRef( str1 );

    if ( sr == StrRef::Null() )
        cout << "str1 was null\n";
    else
        cout << "str1 was not null\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
str1 was not null
```
StrRef::operator =( StrPtr &)

Set a StrPtr to reference an existing StrPtr or null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>StrPtr &amp;s the StrPtr to reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

The = operator is equivalent to calling Set().

Example

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stoddrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    str1.Set( "xyz" );
    StrRef sr = str1;

    cout << "str1 = \"xyz\"\n" << str1.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns \"xyz\"\n" << sr.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

str1 = "xyz"
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
**StrRef::operator =( char * )**

Set a **StrPtr** to reference an existing **StrPtr** or null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrRef</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *buf the null-terminated string to reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The `=` operator is equivalent to calling **Set()**.

**Example**

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyz";
    StrRef sr;
    sr = chars;

    cout << "chars[] = \"" << chars << "\n\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns \"" << sr.Text() << "\n\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
chars[] = "xyz"
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
```
StrRef::operator +=( int )

Increase a StrRef’s pointer and decrease its length.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>int len the amount by which to move the pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

This method has the effect of removing len characters from the beginning of the StrRef. It does not, however, free the memory allocated to those characters.

Example

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyzzy";
    StrRef sr = StrRef( chars );

    sr += 3;
    cout << "chars[] = \"" << chars << \"\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns \"" << sr.Text() << \"\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[] = "xyzzy"
sr.Text() returns "zy"
**StrRef::Set( char * )**

Set a **StrRef** to reference an existing null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><strong>StrRef</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *buf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

**StrRef::Set()** does not copy the target string; it simply establishes a pointer to it. Be sure that the **StrRef** pointing to the target string does not outlive the target string.

**Example**

```c++
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyz";
    StrRef sr;
    sr.Set( chars );
    cout << "chars[] = \"" << chars << "\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns \"" << sr.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
chars[] = "xyz"
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
```
**StrRef::Set( char *, int )**

Set a *StrRef* to reference an existing null-terminated string.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td><em>StrRef</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>char *buf: the null-terminated string to reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>int len: the length of the string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

*StrRef::Set()* does not copy the target string; it simply establishes a pointer to it. Be sure that the *StrRef* pointing to the target string does not outlive the target string.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    char chars[] = "xyzzy";
    StrBuf sb;
    StrRef sr;
    sb.Set( chars );
    sr.Set( chars, 3 );
    printf( "chars[] = \"%s\"\n", chars );
    printf( "sr.Text() returns \"%s\"\n", sr.Text() );
    printf( "sb.Text() returns \"%s\"\n", sb.Text() );
    return 0;
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

chars[] = "xyzzy"
sr.Text() returns "xyzzy"
sb.Text() returns "xyz"
StrRef::Set( const StrPtr * )

Set a StrRef to reference an existing StrPtr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr *s the value to set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

StrRef::Set() does not copy the target string; it simply establishes a pointer to it. Be sure that the StrRef pointing to the target string does not outlive the target string.

Example

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrRef sr;
    sr.Set( "xyz" );
    cout << "sr.Text() returns "" << sr.Text() << "\"n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

sr.Text() returns "xyz"
**StrRef::Set( const StrPtr & )**

Set a `StrRef` to reference an existing `StrPtr`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Virtual?</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>StrRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguments</td>
<td>const StrPtr &amp;s the StrPtr to reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Returns</td>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

`StrRef::Set()` does not copy the target string; it simply establishes a pointer to it. Be sure that the `StrRef` pointing to the target string does not outlive the target string.

**Example**

```cpp
#include <iostream>
#include <stdhdrs.h>
#include <strbuf.h>

int main( int argc, char **argv )
{
    StrBuf str1;
    StrRef sr;

    str1.Set( "xyz" );
    sr.Set( str1 );

    cout << "str1 = " << str1.Text() << "\n";
    cout << "sr.Text() returns " << sr.Text() << "\n";
}
```

Executing the preceding code produces the following output:

```
str1 = "xyz"
sr.Text() returns "xyz"
```
Appendix

License Statements

Perforce software includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/).

Perforce software includes software from the Apache ZooKeeper project, developed by the Apache Software Foundation and its contributors. (http://zookeeper.apache.org/)

Perforce software includes software developed by the OpenLDAP Foundation (http://www.openldap.org/).

Perforce software includes software developed Computing Services at Carnegie Mellon University: Cyrus SASL (http://www.cmu.edu/computing/).